

OPEL

Owner's Manual



Table Of Contents

Introduction.....	2
Getting to know your vehicle.....	5
Dashboard Instruments And Control.....	83
Infotainment System.....	115
Starting & Operating.....	129
Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)	161
In case of emergency.....	197
Maintenance And Vehicle Care.....	211
Technical Specifications.....	243
Customer information.....	258

Introduction

Introduction	2
Link to Company App and Website	2
How To Use This Manual	2
Safety messages	3
Symbols keys	3
Propulsion Type	3
Internal combustion engine (ICE).....	3
Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV).....	3
Fuel cell electric vehicle (FCEV).....	4
Vehicle Modifications / Alterations.....	4
FCEV.....	4

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy. This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Additionally, video tutorials for some vehicle functions can be viewed in the Info Display.

Some functions are only operational when ignition is switched on, when combustion engine is running or when electric engine is ready.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury that may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual. Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, contact a qualified workshop that has the required technical information, skills and equipment. We recommend your Opel Service Partner.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

Your Opel Team

Link to Company App and Website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:



How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**

- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Safety Messages

Danger

Danger

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

Warning

Warning

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage

Symbols Keys



Van



Crew Cab



Vehicle with third seat row

Propulsion Type

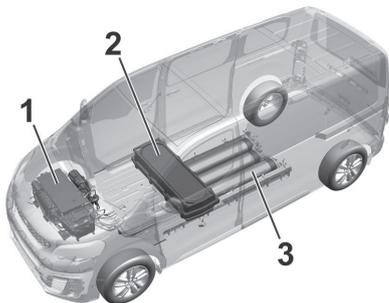
Internal Combustion Engine (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine - diesel or petrol - only.

Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)

A BEV is propelled by an electric engine only. The high-voltage battery is charged using a charging cable and additionally by engine braking.

Fuel Cell Electric Vehicle (FCEV)



The fuel cell vehicle consists of:

- The fuel cell and the electric engine (1) located in the engine compartment.
- The high-voltage battery (2) located under the front seats.
- The hydrogen tank system (3) located under the load compartment.

The hydrogen reacts in the fuel cell with oxygen supplied from the ambient air. Water, heat and electrical energy emerge from this reaction.

Water and excess air are released through the exhaust, while the electric energy is used to provide the electric

engine and the high-voltage battery with power.

In order to maximise the performance of the vehicle and to maintain the charging level of the high-voltage battery at approx. 50%, the system automatically optimises the combination of high-voltage battery and fuel cell use.

Additionally to that, the high-voltage battery can be charged via a charging port. Electric energy is also provided by regenerative braking.

The vehicle may cause a whistle sound while driving. This is normal and does not indicate any damage.

Vehicle Modifications / Alterations

The Manufacturer recommends the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type.

The Manufacturer cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval. Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control

units) may invalidate the manufacturer warranty. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel or electric power consumption, CO₂ emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

FCEV



Important Safety Notice – Cargo Area

Do not drill, cut, or perform any mechanical modifications on or through the cargo floor.

This area contains hydrogen storage tanks operating at pressures up to 700 bar. Any damage or compromise to the structural integrity of this area can lead to severe safety hazards, including hydrogen leakage and risk of explosion. Always consult the manufacturer before making any structural modifications to the vehicle.

Getting to know your vehicle

Keys	6	Tailgate Operation	18	Curtain Airbags	40
Replacement keys	6	Windows	21	Airbag System Malfunction	40
Key with foldaway key section	6	Power Windows	21	Front Passenger Airbag	
Radio Remote Control Function	6	Rear Window	22	Deactivation	41
Replacing battery in radio		Windscreen	23	Child Restraints	41
remote control	7	Sun Visors	24	Child restraints introduction.....	41
Fault.....	7	Blinds	24	Child Seats Recommended	42
Electronic Key System	8	Mirrors	24	Child restraint installation	
Replacing battery in electronic		Power Outside Mirrors	24	locations	44
key	8	Folding Mirrors	25	Steering Wheel	62
Fault.....	8	Heated Mirrors	25	Steering Wheel Adjustment	62
Electronic immobiliser.....	9	Convex Mirrors.....	25	Steering Wheel Controls	62
Central Locking System	9	Inside Rearview Mirror	25	Steering wheel lock	62
Selective unlocking.....	9	Rearview Display Mirror	26	Steering Wheel Shift Paddles	62
Remote control operation.....	9	Head restraints	27	Steering Wheel Heating	63
Electronic key system operation.....	10	Head Restraints Position	27	Horn	63
Central locking button.....	11	Seats	28	Ignition switch.....	63
Operation with the key in case		Front Seat Position	28	Ignition switch	63
of a central locking system fault.....	11	Manual Front Seats	29	Power button	64
Automatic locking	12	Power Front Seats	30	Wipers and washers	64
Automatic locking after driving off....	12	Heated Seats	31	Windshield wiper and washer	64
Automatic relock after unlocking.....	13	Massage Seats	31	Rain sensing wiper control	65
Vehicle security system.....	13	Easy Entry	31	Rear window wiper and washer	65
Anti-theft Locking System	13	Folding Front Seats	31	Exterior Lights	66
Anti-theft Alarm System	13	Front Armrest	32	Lighting controls	66
Immobilizer	15	Rear Seat Position	32	Automatic light control	66
Doors	15	Safety belts	35	High beam	67
Rear Doors Child Locks	15	Seat belts introduction	35	High beam assist.....	67
Sliding Door Operation	16	Seat Belt Pretensioner	37	Headlight flash	67
		Airbag system	38	Headlight height adjustment	68
		Airbag system introduction.....	38	Turn Signals	68
		Front Airbags	39	Emergency Signals	68
		Lateral Airbags	40	Automatic Lighting	69

Front foglamps	69
Rear foglamps	69
Reverse lights	70
Daytime running lights	70
Automatic Headlights Dipping	70
Welcome Lighting	70
Exit lighting	70
Corner Lights	71
Interior lights	71
Courtesy Lights	71
Reading lights	71
Interior Ambient Lights	72
Load compartment lighting	72
Sunvisor lights	72
Sunroof	72
Glass panel.....	72
Interior Storage / Interior Features	72
Storage compartments.....	72
Glove Compartment	73
Cupholders	73
Front storage	74
Seatback Storage	74
12V Power Outlets	75
USB Ports	75
Wireless Phone Charger	76
Load compartment	77

Keys

Warning

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Replacement Keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Key With Foldaway Key Section



Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Radio Remote Control Function



unlocks the vehicle



locks the vehicle



locks or unlocks all doors or selected doors, e.g only the front doors or only the sliding doors together with the tailgate/rear doors



opens or closes power sliding doors

Depending on the version, the radio remote control enables the operation of the following functions:

- central locking system
- selective unlocking
- anti-theft locking system
- anti-theft alarm system
- tailgate unlocking
- power sliding doors
- power windows
- mirrors folding
- vehicle locator lighting

The remote control has a range of up to several metres, but may also be much less due to external influences.

The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Caution

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Replacing Battery In Radio Remote Control

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Remove the back cover from the remote control.
2. Extract the flat battery from its location.
3. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Clip the back cover in place.

Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the

power supply is interrupted for a short time.

- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Electronic Key System

Warning

The electronic key can affect pacemakers.

Keep the electronic key away from your chest.

Depending on the version, the electronic key system enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- central locking system
- tailgate unlocking
- ignition switching on and starting the engine
- headlight activation

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Note

To save battery power, the keyless functions are set to stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To reactivate the functions, press a button on the electronic key.

Replacing Battery In Electronic Key

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Remove the cover.
2. Extract the flat battery from its location.
3. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Clip the cover in place.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.

- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Electronic Immobiliser

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.

If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start.

Contact a workshop.

Central Locking System

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

Note

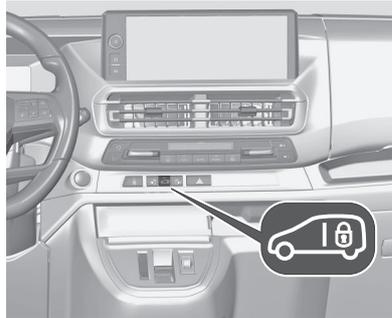
In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Note

A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Selective Unlocking

Selective unlocking allows you to unlock either the front doors and the fuel filler flap or the sliding doors, the rear doors / the tailgate. Selective unlocking has to be configured.



To activate, switch on the ignition and then press  more than two seconds. The LED illuminates.

An audible signal is given and depending on the configuration of the vehicle, a message is displayed in Info Display.

To deactivate, switch on the ignition and then press  for more than two seconds. The LED extinguishes.

Remote Control Operation

Unlocking



Press .

Unlocking mode can be set. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors and load compartment will be unlocked by pressing .
- Only the driver's door and the passenger door will be unlocked by pressing .

Unlocking the load compartment

Press  or press  two times to unlock the load compartment only, i.e. sliding doors and rear doors or tailgate.

Locking

Close doors and the load compartment.



Press .

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Electronic Key System Operation

This system allows automatic vehicle locking and unlocking simply by detection of the electronic key. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle.

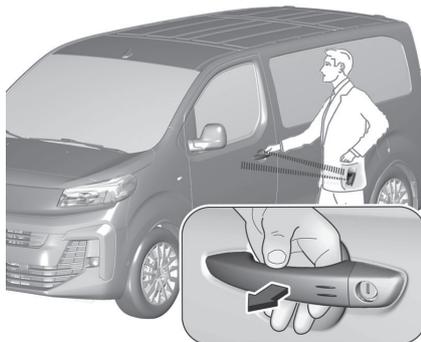
Note

If the vehicle is not closed properly or the electronic key remains in the vehicle, locking will not be permitted.

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, a warning chime sounds after a few seconds.

Note

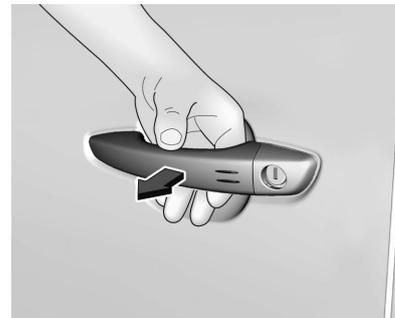
The electronic key may not operate if placed close to electronic devices such as mobile phones or laptop computers.



The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx.

one metre of the relevant door side.

Unlocking



Pass a hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors, the sliding doors, the hinged doors or press the tailgate button.

Keep the hand behind the door handle or keep the tailgate button pressed to open the windows.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, the hinged doors / the load compartment and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of the front door handles, the handles of the sliding doors or the handles of the hinged doors. If

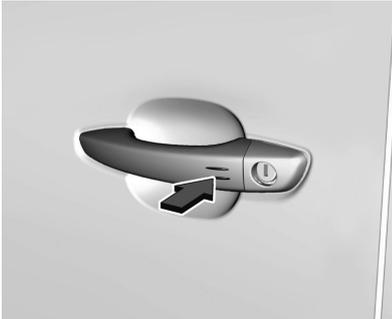
the vehicle is equipped with a tailgate, press the tailgate button.

- Only the front doors and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of front door handles.

Unlocking the load compartment

Only the load compartment, i.e. the hinged doors or the tailgate, will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the hinged doors handle or pressing the tailgate button.

Locking



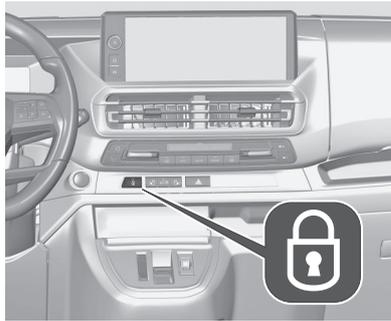
Press on one of the door handles or press the tailgate button. All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be locked.

Confirmation

Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers.

Central Locking Button

Locks or unlocks all doors and the load compartment from inside the passenger compartment. If the vehicle is equipped with electronic key system, the fuel filler flap is locked or unlocked, too.



Press  to lock. The LED in the button illuminates.

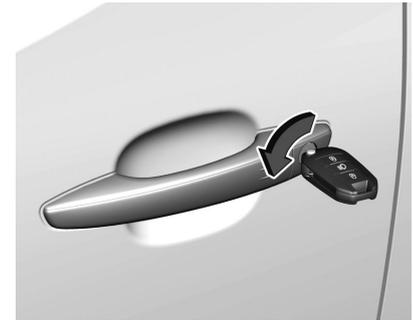
Press  again to unlock. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Operation With The Key In Case Of A Central Locking System Fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is discharged, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

Manual unlocking

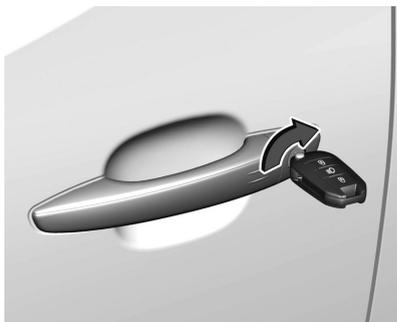
Electronic key: press and hold the latch to extract the integral key.



Manually unlock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be unlocked. Without a working central locking system, the other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle.

The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked. By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

Manual locking



Manually lock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be locked.



To lock the other doors if the central locking system is not working:

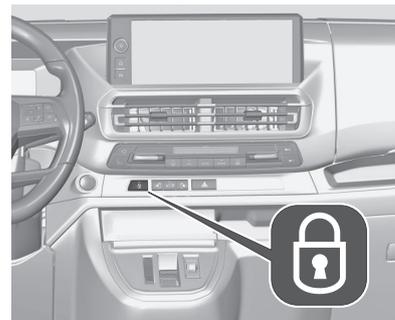
- Make sure the child lock is not activated.
- Remove the black cover by using a key and turning clockwise.
- Insert key carefully and move to the inner side of the door without turning the key.
- Remove key and attach black cover.

The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.

Automatic locking

Automatic Locking After Driving Off

This system allows automatic locking of the doors and the tailgate as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h. If one of the doors or the tailgate is open, the automatic central locking does not take place. This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of  in the instrument cluster, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.



Depending on version, this function can be activated or deactivated at any time. With the ignition on, press  until an

audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Automatic Relock After Unlocking

This feature automatically locks all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

Vehicle security system

Anti-Theft Locking System

Warning

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated. Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating

Simple key: Insert the key and turn it clockwise twice within 5 seconds.

Remote control: Press  on the radio remote control twice within five seconds.

Electronic key: Press twice on one of the door handles within five seconds.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

Warning

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The anti-theft alarm system has been designed to protect the vehicle against theft and break-ins.

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.

The system monitors doors, tailgate, bonnet and the passenger compartment. Depending on the version of the vehicle, it may not monitor the adjoining load compartment.

Activation

Ignition must be switched off. All doors must be closed and the electronic key must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- Radio remote control: Monitoring of the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet is activated five seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing . Monitoring of the passenger compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing .
- Electronic key system: Monitoring of the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet is activated five seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles at the markings. Monitoring of the passenger compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles at the markings.

Activation is confirmed by the flashing of the status LED and coming on of the turn lights for a short time.

If a door or the tailgate is not correctly closed and the vehicle is locked via remote control or electronic key system, the vehicle remains unlocked. However, the anti-theft alarm system will be activated after 45 seconds.

Note

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Switch of ignition.
2. Press  within the next ten seconds until the LED of the button illuminates constantly.
3. Get out of the vehicle.
4. Lock the vehicle immediately by using the remote control, pressing one of the door handles or by pressing the tailgate button.

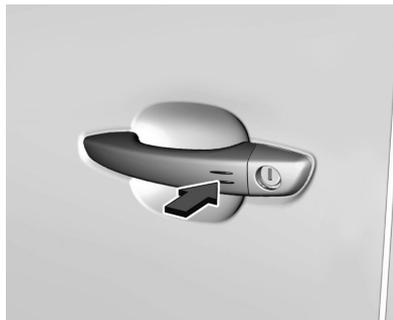
Activation is indicated by the flashing of the status LED.

Indication

LED in the central locking button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing  deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Note

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door is opened, the vehicle is automatically relocked after 30 seconds. In this case, the anti-theft alarm will be reactivated, too.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings with electronic key system. The LED of the  button will extinguish and the turn lights flash for a short time.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the rapid flashing of the LED of the  button. If the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition

on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

If the battery has been reconnected, wait for ten minutes to restart the engine.

Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm

Lock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.

Malfunction of the remote control

Unlock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.

Open the driver's door.

The horn of the anti-theft alarm will sound.

Switch on ignition.

The horn will stop sounding and the status LED extinguishes.

Immobilizer

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

Note

Radio frequency identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

Note

Note The immobiliser does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it.

Switch on the anti-theft alarm system.

Emergency operation of electronic key.

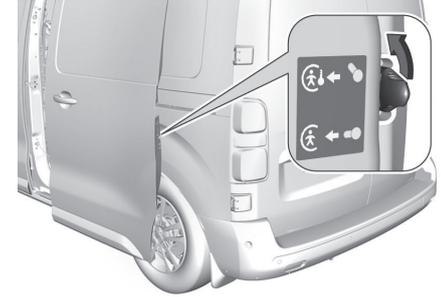
Doors

Rear Doors Child Locks

⚠ Warning

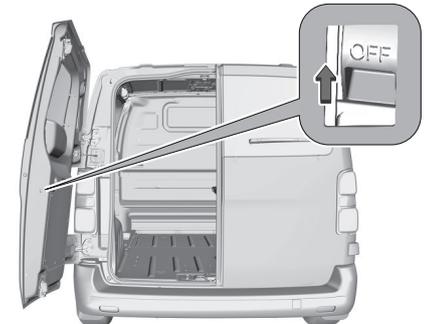
Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Mechanical child locks



To activate, turn the child lock upwards. The sliding door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, turn the child lock downwards. The sliding door can be opened from the inside.



To activate, turn the child lock upwards. The hinged door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, turn the child lock downwards. The hinged door can be opened from the inside.

Electric child locks



Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the sliding doors via the interior door handles.

Switching on

Press . The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.

Switching off

Press  again. The indicator lamp on button goes off, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator lamp remains on while child lock is switched on.

Sliding Door Operation

Opening



After unlocking, pull the outside door handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.



To open from inside, push the handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.

Closing



To close from outside, pull the door handle and slide the door towards the front until it locks.



To close from inside, push the handle and slide the door towards the front until it locks.

Danger

Do not drive with the sliding side door open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Ensure the sliding side door is fully closed and secure before driving the vehicle.

Caution

To avoid damage, do not attempt to operate the sliding side door when the fuel filler flap is open.

Power sliding doors

Warning

Take care when operating the power sliding doors. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Take particular care when the vehicle is parked on a slope: open or close the door fully until it latches into its locking position.

Keep a close watch on the moving doors when operating. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped during operation and no-one is standing within the moving area.

The power sliding doors can be operated by:

- pressing  or  on the radio remote control
- pressing  or  on the electronic key
- pressing  or  on the instrument panel
- pressing  or  on the door frame
- hands-free operation with motion sensors below the rear bumper
- pulling the respective door handle.

Operation with the electronic key



Press  or  longer to open or close the respective power sliding door.

Hands-free operation

Depending on the vehicle configuration, the vehicle may have one or two hands-free operated sliding doors.



To open or close a sliding door, move the foot below the rear bumper on the respective side back and forth.



The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the motion sensors. Depending on the configuration of the vehicle, the electronic key has to be located in the respective area. Do not hold the foot longer or move too slow below the bumper.

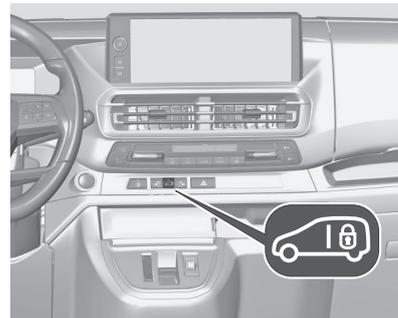
Initialising the power sliding doors

If the power sliding doors cannot be operated, initialise as follows:

- Fully close the door manually.
- Fully open the door electrically.
- Fully close the door electrically.
- Repeat for second door.

Tailgate Operation**Opening**

After unlocking, press the tailgate button and open the tailgate.



Depending on the version, press  to unlock the tailgate from the inside.

Closing

To lower the tailgate use the interior handle. Push the tailgate from above until it is fully closed.

Do not push the tailgate button whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.



With the electronic key outside the vehicle and within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate, press the right tailgate button to lock the vehicle.

General hints for operating tailgate

Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle.

This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

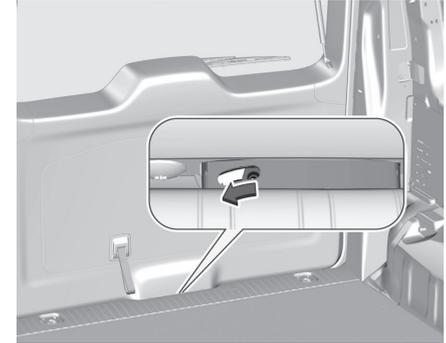
Note

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Note

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Emergency tailgate opening from inside the vehicle



An access hole between the door and the floor enables the tailgate latch to be released using a suitable tool. Push lever to the left to unlock and open the tailgate.

Hinged doors

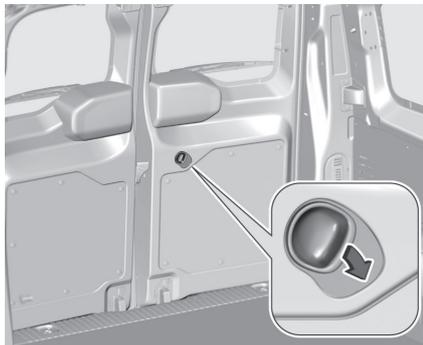
Unlock the hinged doors with the remote control or by turning the key in the rear door lock cylinder.



To open the hinged doors, pull the exterior handle.



To release the right hinged door, pull the lever.

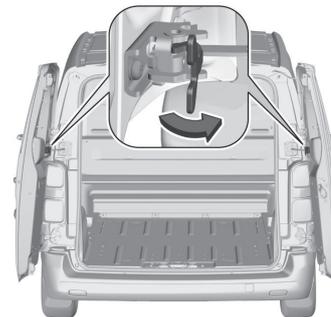


To open the door from inside the vehicle, pull the interior handle.

Warning

The rear lights may be obscured if the rear doors are open and the vehicle is parked on the roadside.

Make other road users aware of the vehicle, by using a warning triangle or other equipment specified in the road traffic regulations.



The doors are retained in the 90° position by locking stays. To open the doors to 180°, push the latch and swing open to the desired position.

Before closing the doors ensure that the locking stays are in the 90° position.

Warning

Ensure extended opening doors are secured when fully opened. Opened doors may slam closed due to the force of the wind!

Always close the right hand door before the left hand door.

Windows

Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

Note

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Note

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Power Windows

Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.

Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows.



Operate  for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated. Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety function

This function depends upon version. If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled.

To stop movement, release the switch.

Operating windows from outside

The windows can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.

Press and hold  to close windows. Release button to stop window movement.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

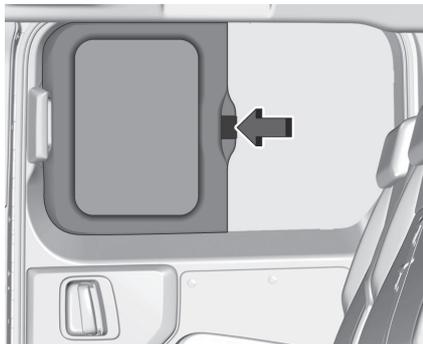
Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

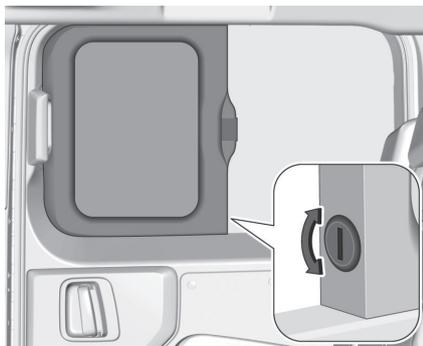
1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Push switch until the window is completely open.
4. Pull switch until the window is completely closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Rear Window



To open and close the rear windows, push the lever and slide the windows backwards or forwards.

Mechanical child lock for rear windows



To activate, turn the child lock with the key upwards. The sliding window cannot be opened from the inside.

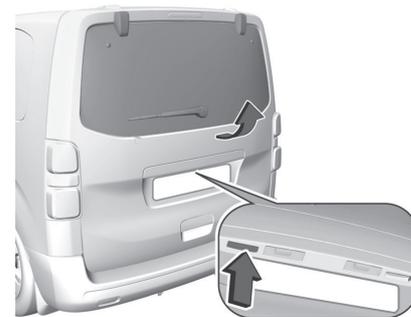
To deactivate, turn the child lock with the key downwards. The sliding window can be opened from the inside.

Tailgate window

The tailgate window can be opened to give access to the load compartment without opening the tailgate.

The tailgate and the tailgate window cannot be opened at the same time.

Opening



After unlocking, press the button and open the window until it is fully opened.

Closing



Press on the centre of the window until it is fully closed.

Heated rear window

Operated by pressing . Depending on the version, the heated rear window is operated together with the heated exterior mirrors.

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Depending on climate control system,  is located at a different position.



Windscreen

Windshield stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windshield in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windshield replacement

Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windshield replacement is performed accurately according to Manufacturer specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly

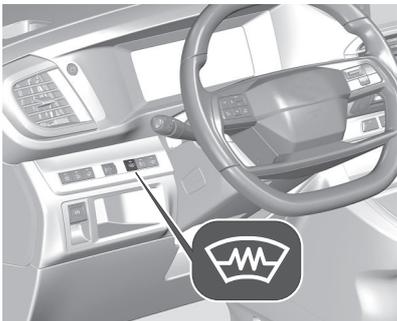
and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.

Heated windscreen



This function heats the windscreen along its bottom and along both sides of the windscreen.

Thus, the function allows a fast detaching of the windscreen wiper blades if they are frozen to the windscreen. Additionally, an accumulation of snow caused by the operation of the windscreen wipers is prevented.



Heating is operated by pressing . LED in button illuminates.

The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature. Pressing  again switches off the heating operation. LED in button is extinguished.

Sun Visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling. The cover of the mirrors should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

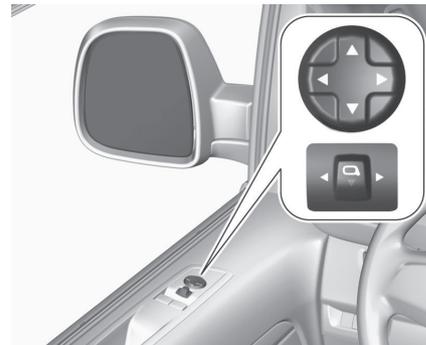
Blinds



To reduce sunlight at the second row seats, pull the blind upwards using the grip and engage it at the top of the door frame.

Mirrors

Power Outside Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing the mirror button  to the left or right.

Adjust the respective mirror with the four-way control.

Folding Mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric folding

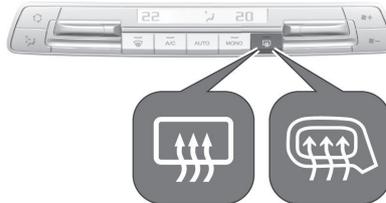


Pull the mirror button  downwards. Both exterior mirrors will fold. Pull the mirror button downwards again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position. If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pulling mirror button downwards will only electrically extend the other mirror.

Automatic folding

When the vehicle is being locked, both mirrors will fold. When the vehicle is being unlocked, the mirrors return to their original position. The function can be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Heated Mirrors



Depending on the version, heating is operated by pressing  or . The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Convex Mirrors

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Inside Rearview Mirror

Manual anti-dazzle



To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

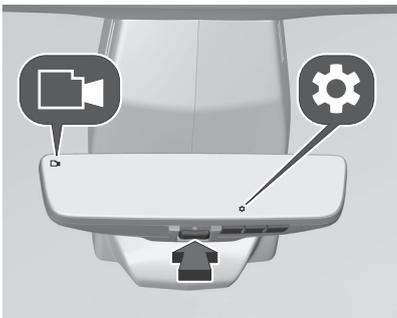
Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced when driving in the dark.

Rearview Display Mirror

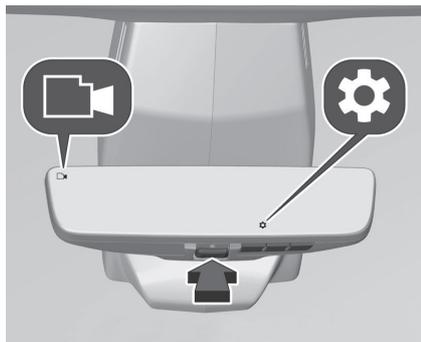
If switched off, the rear view display functions as a standard mirror.



If switched on, the rear view display can show two different views:

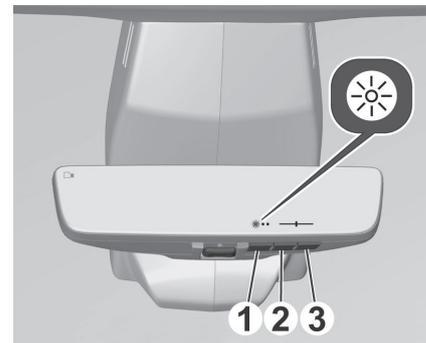
- rear view
- rear view and passenger side view

Switching on and off



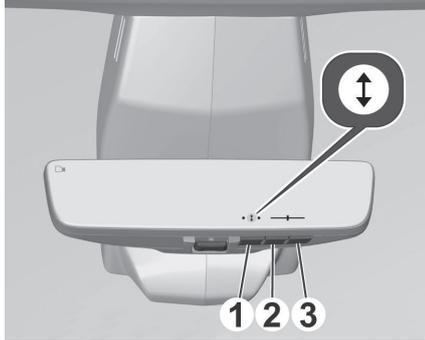
Press button to switch on and off.
If activated, a camera symbol appears in the upper left corner.

Setting the brightness



Press (1) to open the settings .
Press once again to open the brightness menu.
Press (2) to decrease brightness.
Press (3) to increase brightness.
Brightness levels from one to five, preset level is three.
The selected level is highlighted in the slider menu on the display.
To close the settings, press (1) until they are closed.

Setting the angle



Press (1) to open the settings .

Press two times more to open the angle menu.

Press (2) to set the angle downwards.

Press (3) to set the angle upwards.

Angle levels from one to nine, preset level is five.

The selected level is highlighted in the slider menu on the display.

To close the settings, press (1) until they are closed. Otherwise they will be closed automatically after a few minutes.

Auto dimming

The brightness of the display is adapted to the environment by automatic dimming.

Memorisation of settings value

The user setting and the on/off mode is memorised after the ignition is switched off.

Selecting a view

If the setting menu is not activated:

- by pressing button (3)



- by pressing the button on the lever.

Fault

In the event of a fault, the display will be grey with the camera symbol shown crossed out.

The display will also be grey and  appears in the display, if a door is opened.

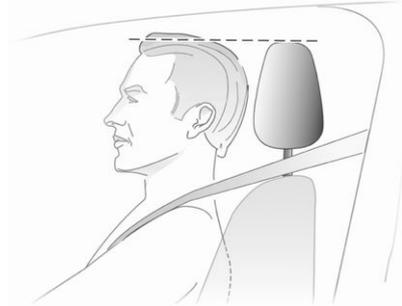
In exceptional case of transporting long objects in the load compartment with the need to have the right-hand rear door open, assure that the left door is closed and mechanically locked.

For further driving with the right-hand rear door open, the latest display view can be re-opened by long press on button (3).

Head restraints

Head Restraints Position

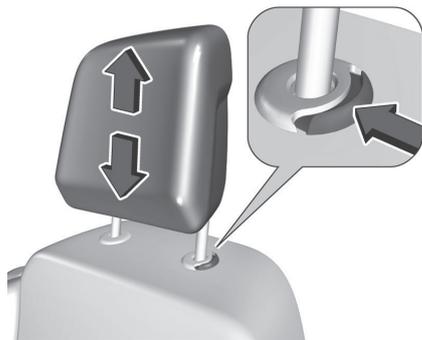
The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.



⚠ Warning

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

Adjustment



Move the head restraint upwards or downwards. If the head restraint is engaged press the catch and move the head restraint.

Removal

Move the head restraint upwards and remove it. If the head restraint is engaged press the catch and move the head restraint.

The headrests of passenger seats with removable flap are fixed. They can not be adjusted or removed.

Installation

Engage the head restraint rods in the openings and push it downwards.

Seats

Front Seat Position

⚠ Warning

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

For safety reasons, adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.



Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at upper head level.
- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.

- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine

Warning

Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Warning

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat.

There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats, or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Manual Front Seats

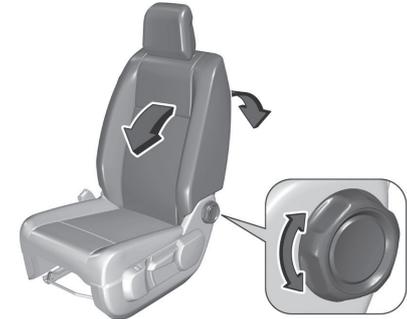
Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Longitudinal adjustment



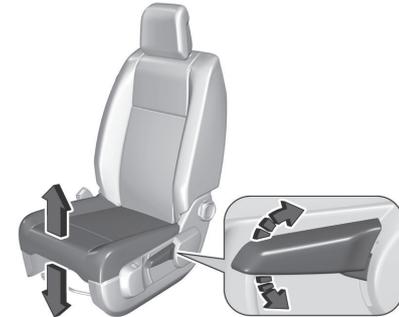
Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Backrest inclination



Turn handwheel to adjust inclination. Do not lean on the backrest while adjusting.

Seat height



Lever pumping motion
up: seat higher
down: seat lower

Lumbar support

Turn the handwheel to suit personal requirements.

Power Front Seats

⚠ Warning

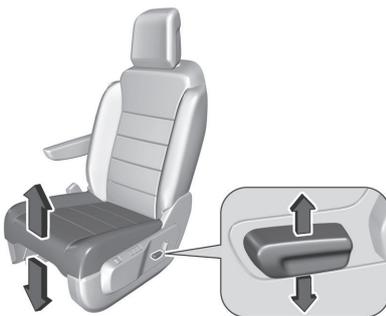
Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped.

Caution

Do not arrange objects beneath the electrically adjustable seat and do not impede its movement, since the controls may be damaged. They may also restrict the seat travel.

Longitudinal adjustment

Move the switch forwards / backwards.

Seat height

Move the switch upwards / downwards.

Backrest inclination

Tilt the switch forwards / backwards.

Lumbar support

Press  to suit personal requirements.

Heated Seats



The seat heating thumb wheel can be located at the seat or on the instrument panel.

Activate seat heating by turning the thumb wheel  for the respective front seat. There are three intensity levels of heating.

To deactivate the seat heating turn the thumb wheel  to 0.

The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Massage Seats



Activate the back massage function by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. The massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in six cycles with breaks in between.

To adjust the intensity of the massage press . Two levels of massage are available.

Pressing  once more deactivates massage function. The LED goes off. The massage function is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Easy Entry

To permit an easy entrance to the seats of the third row, the seats of the second row can be tilted.



Pull the release lever and tilt seat to the front.

To restore the original position tilt seat back until it is engaged.

Folding Front Seats

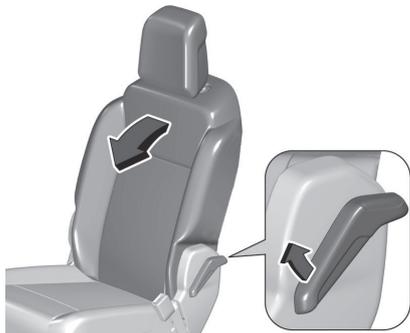
Depending on version, the front seats can be folded flat to the table position.

Front seats backrest

Folding

Slide the front seat as far back as possible, to avoid contact with the instrument panel during folding.

Push the head restraint down or remove it before folding backrest.



Pull the lever, fold the backrest fully forwards and release the lever.

Note

Note In the event of an accident, passengers can be evacuated from the passenger compartment by completely folding down the driver's seat.

⚠ Warning

When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Unfolding

To restore the seat to the upright position, pull the lever and raise backrest fully. Then release the lever.

Bench seat front passenger side

Folding



To lift the seat cushion pull the loop and raise the seat cushion against the backrest.

⚠ Warning

Never put the hand underneath the seat while folding the seat.
Risk of injury.

Unfolding

To restore the seat cushion to the original position, lower the seat cushion till it is engaged.

Front Armrest

The armrest has several adjustment options.



1. Fold it completely up.
2. Fold it completely down.
3. Raise the armrest slowly and engage it at the desired position.

Rear Seat Position

Warning

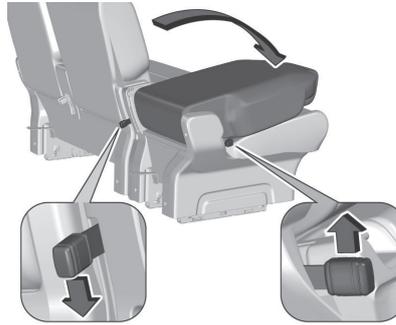
When seats are being adjusted or folded, keep hands and feet away from the moving area. Risk of injury. Ensure that there are no objects on the anchor points or rails. Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably. Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Depending on version the levers of the seats can be located at different places.

Seat Backrest

Folding backrest down to table position

1. Push the head restraint down or remove it before folding the backrest.
2. If available fold up the armrest.



3. Pull the front lever or push the rear lever to release the backrest.
4. Fold the backrest fully down.

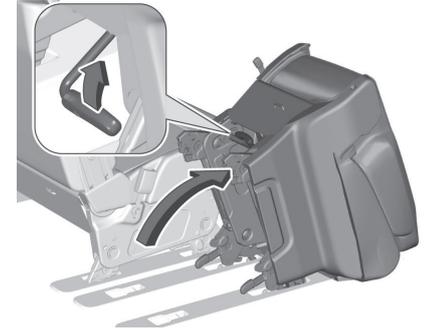
Unfolding the backrest

1. Pull the front lever or press the rear lever.
2. Raise the backrest fully upwards until it engages.

Fixed rear seats

Tilted position

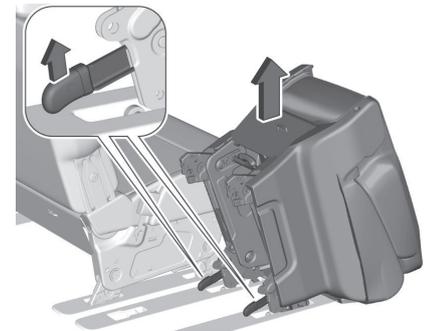
1. Fold the backrest down to the table position.



2. Pull the release lever and tilt the seat to the front.

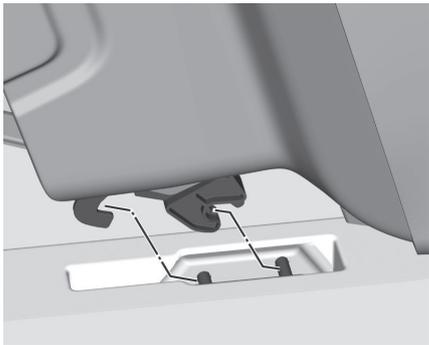
Removing

1. Fold the backrest down to the table position.
2. Move the seat to the tilted position.

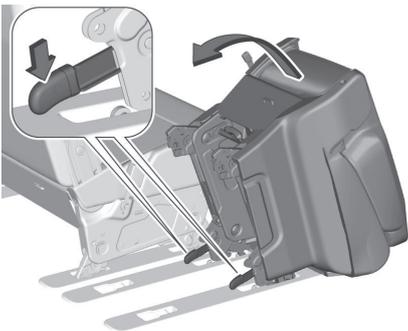


3. Release each front mount by pulling the respective lever.
4. Remove the seat.

Installing



1. Engage front mounts in the anchorages.

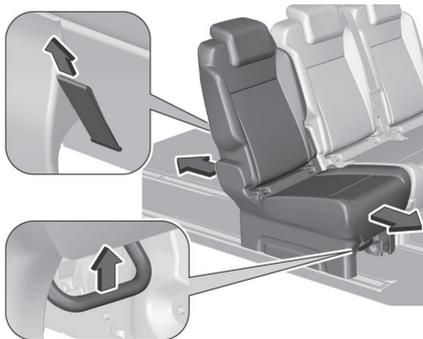


2. Push the levers to lock the front mounts and tilt the seat back until it is engaged.
3. Unfold the backrest.

Vis-à-Vis seats

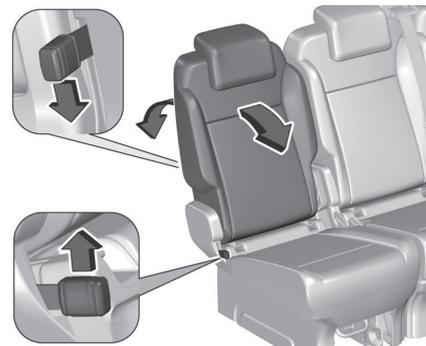
Longitudinal adjustment

The single seats as well as the seat bench can be moved individually forwards and backwards.

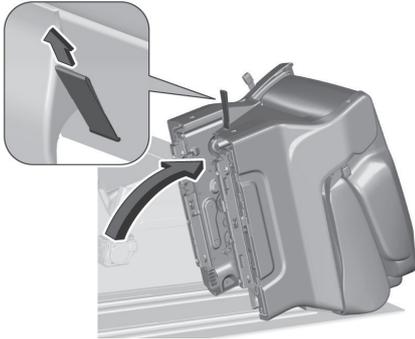


To release the seat, pull the front handle upward or pull the loop on the rear without going beyond the point of resistance. Slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Backrest inclination



Pull the front lever or push the rear lever to release and adjust the backrest. Release the lever when the desired position is obtained.

Removing

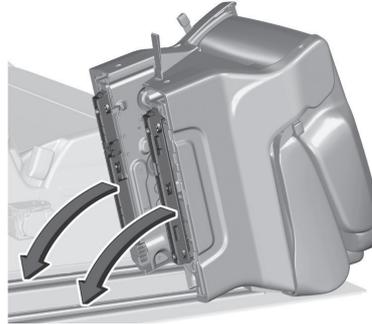
1. Pull the loop on the rear beyond the point of resistance and tilt the seat to the front.
2. Remove the seat.

Caution

Do not use the loop to lift the seat.

Installing

1. The loop on the rear has to be in the release position.



2. Place the front of the seat on the rails and then tip the rear down.
3. Slide the seat until it engages.

Caution

Avoid contact between two seats. This could cause significant wear of the parts in contact. Move and lock the rearward facing seats of the second row as close as possible to the front row seat, depending on the position of the front row seats. The distance between the rearward facing seats of the second row and the forward facing third row seats should be as big as possible.

**Safety belts****Seat Belts Introduction**

The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat

position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced.

After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

Note

Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Note

Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

Seat belt reminder

Not removable seats are equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator  in the instrument cluster and in the overhead console.

Belt force limiters

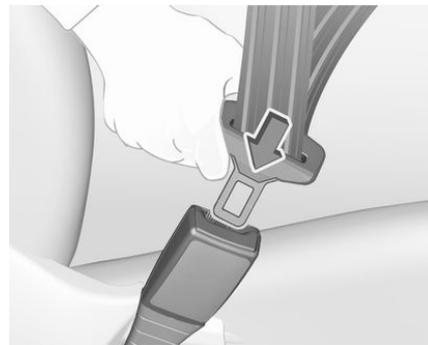
Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Three Points Seat Belt

Fasten



Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body. With the other hand, pull the seat belt down and forward so that the latch plate is able to slide without resistance. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.

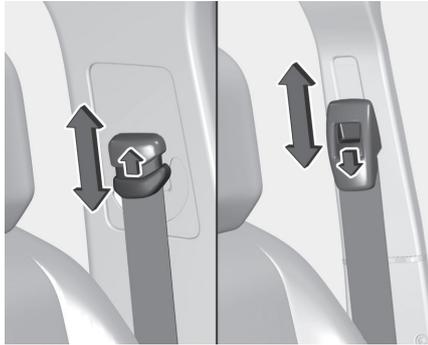


Loose or bulky clothing prevents the seat belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

Warning

The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Height adjustment



Press the release button and shift the height adjuster upwards or downwards till it engages at the desired position.



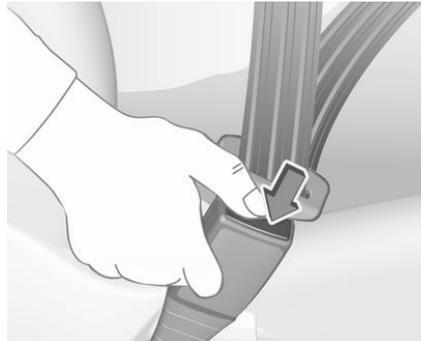
Adjust the height so that the seat belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

Do not adjust while driving.
Seat belts on the rear seats and bench seat



The retractor can be located on the backrest of the seat.

Unfasten



To release seat belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Using seat belts while pregnant



⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat Belt Pretensioner

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the single front seat belts and the seat belt of the outer front bench seat are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator .

Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

Note

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components, as this will invalidate the operating permit of your vehicle.

Airbag system

Airbag System Introduction

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Warning

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ Warning

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

⚠ Warning

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not affix or attach anything near to or in the exit path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.

Do not affix or attach anything to:

- The steering wheel and dashboard.
- The seat backrests (e.g. clothing).
- The roof.

Note

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area.

Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.

Each airbag is triggered only once.

Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems



⚠ Danger

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD

oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

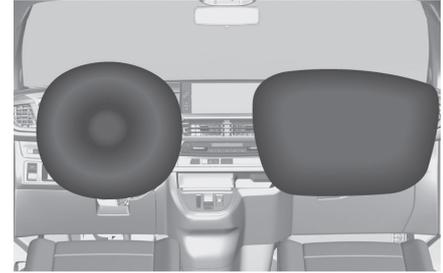
IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO! Additionally, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the Owner's Manual online. The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor.

Front Airbags

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a

certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

⚠ Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position. Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions. Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Lateral Airbags



The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

Warning

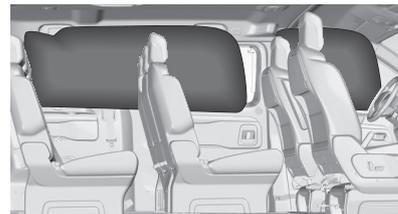
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Note

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain Airbags

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

Airbag System Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp  lights up on the instrument panel. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Warning

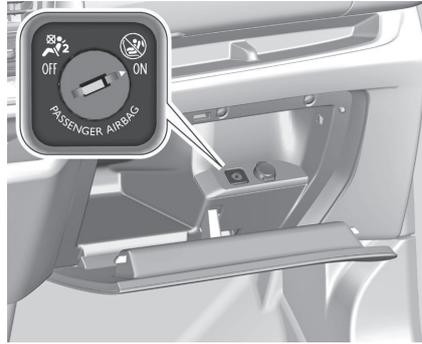
In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table "Child restraint installation locations".

When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The switch is located inside the glove box.

With the ignition off:

- To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "OFF" position.
- To reactivate it, turn the key to the "ON" position.

Associated Warning Lights



Steady, permanent lighting to indicate deactivation.



Steady lighting when the ignition is turned on for approximately 1 minute to indicate activation.

Warning

Deactivate passenger airbag in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the tables "Child restraint installation locations".

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.

Child Restraints

Child Restraints Introduction

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country. It is recommended that children travel on the rear seats of the vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3 years old.
- "forward facing" over the age of 3 years old.

Warning

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

⚠ Warning

Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened. For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Seat belt installation
- ISOFIX anchorage connectors
- Top-tether anchors

Seat belt installation

Three-point seat belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened.

Isofix Anchorage Connectors



Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.



i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

Top-tether anchors

Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol  for a child seat.



In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors. ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table "Child restraint installation locations".

Child Seats Recommended

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system. Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident. Do not use forward-facing child restraint system at all seats when child's weight is below 13 kg.

Suitable are child restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems. The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

"RÖMER Baby-Safe 3 i-Size"

Size: 40 - 83 cm



From birth to 15 months

(up to 13 kg)

With or without its ISOFIX base.
Suitable for "rearward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size"

Size: 76 - 105 cm



From 15 months to 4 years

(from 9 to 22 kg)

Installed with ISOFIX and Top Tether mountings.
Suitable for "forward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER KidFix i-Size"

Size: 100 - 150 cm



From 3.5 to 12 years

(from 15 to 36 kg)

Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Child seat at the front: Adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.

Child seat at the rear: Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the

backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing or the rearward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Please follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions to install the corresponding child restraint system in the vehicle.

For semi-universal or vehicle specific child restraint system (ISOFIX or belted child restraint system), see the vehicle list provided in the user manual of the child restraint system.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following tables.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system that has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

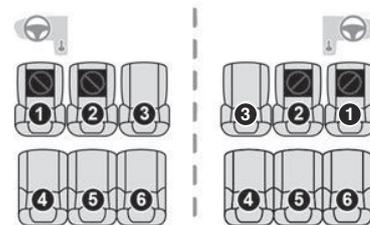
Child Restraint Installation Locations

Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.
- A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
- A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1**.
- A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.
- A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible for **B2**.

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.
- (c) To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated "OFF".

- (d) Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated "ON".
- (e) For a "rearward facing" and/or a "forward facing" universal child seat (**U**) in groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size only.
- (f) For a "forward facing" universal child seat (**UF**) in groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.
- (g) With fixed row 1 bench seat only.
- (h) To install a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat on a rear seat, move the seats in front of it forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (i) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front (with the front seat adjusted to 2 notches ahead of the centre of the slide).



3	    	 
2		
5		
4 6		    

* Depending on versions, see table locations for child seats.

Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.



Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups **1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.



- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat for **toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.



Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.



ISOFIX "**carrycot**" type child seat:

- **L1: left-hand** facing.
- **L2: right-hand** facing.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) row 2		
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Rearward facing	no	no	yes (e)	no	yes (h)	
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Forward facing	no	no	yes (f)		yes (h)	
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Rearward / Forward facing	no	no	no		no	
Position equipped with a Top Tether hook	no	no	no		no	
" Carry-cot " type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no	no	yes/no (g)	no	yes/no (g)



Seat numbers

	Front seats (b)				Rear seats (b) row 2	
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6
Front passenger airbag		Deactiva- ted "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactiva- ted "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	
"Rearward facing" ISO-FIX child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	no	R3 (i)/no (g)		R3 (i)/no (g)
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	no	F3	no	F3
" Booster " child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no	no	B2 (g)	no	B2 (g)

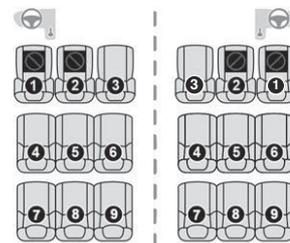
Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.
- A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
- A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1**.
- A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.
- A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible for **B2**.

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.
- (c) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated "**OFF**".
- (d) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated "**ON**".

- (e) For a "**rearward facing**" and/or a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**U**) in groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size only.
- (f) For a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**UF**) in groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.
- (g) Bench seat version.
- (h) Installing a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
- (i) Installation possible only behind the row 1 individual passenger seat.
- (j) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.
- (k) Only with row 1 individual seats.
- (l) No compatible if version with row 1 bench seat.
- (m) With row 1 bench seat.

- (n) The seat in row 2 cannot be used when an **i-Size** child seat is installed immediately behind.



3	ISOFIX OFF → U ISOFIX ON → UF
2	ISOFIX
4 5 6	U ISOFIX L1/L2 ISOFIX R1/R2/R3 ISOFIX R1 ISOFIX B2/B3 ISOFIX F2X/F2/F3
7 8 9	U ISOFIX F2X/F2/F3 B2

* Depending on versions, see table locations for child seats.

Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.



Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups 1, 2 or 3, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.



Seat position authorised for the installation of a **"forward facing" i-Size** child seat.



Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat**.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.



"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat for **toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.



Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.



ISOFIX **"carrycot"** type child seat:

- **L1:** left-hand facing.
- **L2:** right-hand facing.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table **"Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats"**.

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers								
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3		
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)				
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Rearward facing	no	no	yes (e)	no		yes		yes	
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Forward facing	no	no	yes (f)		yes			yes	
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Rearward facing	no	no	no	yes (k)/no (l)	yes (j) (k)/no (l)	yes (k)/no (j)	yes (n)	yes (j) (n)	yes (n)
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Forward facing	no	no	no	yes	yes (j)	yes	yes (n)	yes (j) (n)	yes (n)

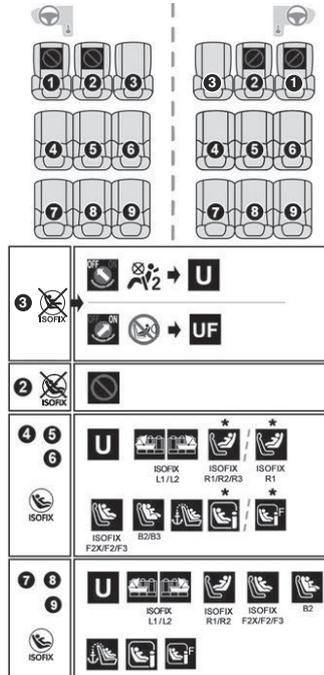


Seat numbers

	Front seats (b)		Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3			
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)				
Position equipped with a Top Tether hook	no	no	no		yes			yes	
"Carry-cot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no	no	yes (h) (i) (l)	yes (h) (i) (j) (l)	yes (h) (i) (l)		no	
"Rearward facing" ISOFIX child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	no	R3 (k) (l)/R1 (m)	R3 (j) (k) (l)/R1 (j) (m)	R3 (k) (l)/R1 (m)		no	
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	no	F3	F3 (j)	F3	F3	F3 (j)	F3
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no	no	B3	B3 (j)	B3	B2	B2 (j)	B2

Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.
 - A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
 - A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1**.
 - A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.
 - A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible for **B2**.
- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
 - (b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.
 - (c) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated "**OFF**".
 - (d) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated "**ON**".
 - (e) For a "**rearward facing**" and/or a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**U**) in groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size only.
 - (f) For a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**UF**) in groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.
 - (g) Bench seat version.
 - (h) Installing a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
 - (i) Installation possible only behind the row 1 individual passenger seat.
 - (j) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.
 - (k) Only with row 1 individual seats.
 - (l) No compatible if version with row 1 bench seat.
 - (m) With row 1 bench seat.
 - (n) Not compatible with fixed one-piece bench seat row 3 or Seat and fixed rear bench seat row 3.
 - (o) Compatible only for 3 individual seats in row 3.
 - (p) The seat in row 2 must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 3 and the seat immediately in front.
 - (q) The seat in row 2 cannot be used when an **i-Size** child seat is installed immediately behind.



* Depending on versions, see table locations for child seats.

Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.



Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups 1, 2 or 3, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.



Seat position authorised for the installation of a **"forward facing" i-Size** child seat.



Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat**.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1:** ISOFIX child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2:** ISOFIX **reduced size** child seat.
- **R3:** ISOFIX **large size** child seat.



"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X:** ISOFIX child seat for **toddlers**.
- **F2:** ISOFIX **reduced height** child seat.
- **F3:** ISOFIX **full height** child seat.



Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.



ISOFIX "**carrycot**" type child seat:

- **L1:** left-hand facing.
- **L2:** right-hand facing.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers									
	Front seats (b)				Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3		
	1	2 (g)		3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)					
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Rearward facing	no	no	yes (e)	no		yes			yes	
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes (f)		yes			yes	
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Rearward facing	no	no		no	yes (k)/no (l)	yes (j) (k)/no (l)	yes (k)/no (l)	yes (q)	yes (j) (n)	yes (q)
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Forward facing	no	no		no	yes	yes (j)	yes	yes (q)	yes (j) (q)	yes (q)



Seat numbers

	Front seats (b)		Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3			
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Front passenger airbag		Deacti- vated "OFF" (c)	Activa- ted "ON" (d)	Deacti- vated "OFF" (c)	Activa- ted "ON" (d)				
Position equipped with a Top Tether hook	no	no	no	yes			yes		
" Carry-cot " type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no	no	yes (h) (i) (l)	yes (h) (i) (j) (k)	yes (h) (i) (l)	yes (h) (o) (p)/ no (n)	yes (h) (j) (o) (p)/no (n)	yes (h) (o) (p)/ no (n)
"Rearward facing" ISOFIX child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	no	R3 (k) (l)/R1 (m)	R3 (j) (k) (l)/ R1 (j) (m)	R3 (k) (l)/R1 (m)	R2 (o) (p)/no (n)		
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	no	F3	F3 (j)	F3	F3	F3 (j)	F3
" Booster " child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no	no	B3	B3 (j)	B3	B2	B2 (j)	B2

Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.
 - A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
 - A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1**.
 - A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.
 - A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible for **B2**.
- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.
- (c) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated "**OFF**".
- (d) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated "**ON**".
- (e) For a "**rearward facing**" and/or a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**U**) in groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size only.
- (f) For a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**UF**) in groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.
- (g) To install a "**rearward facing**" or "**forward facing**" child seat on a rear seat, move the seats in front of it forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (h) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front.
- (i) The seat in row 2 must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 3 and the seat immediately in front.
- (j) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.
- (k) If 2 individual seats or 1 single individual seat installed in row 3.
- (l) If 3 individual seats installed in row 3.
- (m) The seat in row 2 cannot be used when an **i-Size** child seat is installed immediately behind.
- (n) Not compatible If 2 individual seats or 1 single individual seat installed in row 2.
- (o) Not compatible If 2 individual seats or 1 single individual seat installed in row 3.
- (p) Install an **i-Size** child restraint system only if the individual seats are installed in forward direction.



Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers								
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3		
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
									
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)				
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Rearward facing	no	yes (e)	no		no			no	
Position compatible with an universal (a) child seat Forward facing	no		yes (f)		yes (g)	yes (g) (j)	yes (g)	yes (g) (j)	yes (g)
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Rearward facing	no		no		yes (m)/no (n)	yes (j)/no (n)	yes (m)/no (o)	yes (j) (m)/no (o)	yes (m)/no (o)
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat Forward facing	no		no		yes (f) (m) (p)	yes (f) (j) (m) (p)	yes (f) (m) (p)	yes (f) (j) (p)	yes (f) (p)

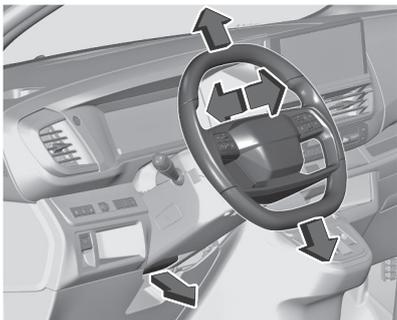


Seat numbers

	Front seats (b)		Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3			
	1	2 (g)	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)	Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)				
Position equipped with a Top Tether hook	no		no		yes			yes	
"Carry-cot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no		no		no			no	
"Rearward facing" ISOFIX child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no		no	R3 (h)	R3 (h) (j)	R3 (h)	R3 (i) (k)/R2 (i) (l)	R3 (i) (j) (k)/R2 (i) (l) (j) (l)	R3 (i) (k)/R2 (i) (l)
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no		no	F3	F3 (j)	F3	F3	F3 (j)	F3
" Booster " child seat (B2 / B3)	no		no	B3	B3 (j)	B3	B3 (k)/B2 (l)	B3 (j) (k)/B2 (l)	B3 (k)/B2 (l)

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Adjustment



- When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

Steering Wheel Controls

Some driver assistance systems, Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.



Steering Wheel Lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

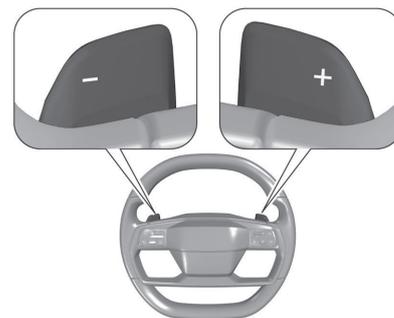
Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged or in the event of a malfunction, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Warning

In the event of a malfunction of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

Steering Wheel Shift Paddles



On vehicles with automatic transmission, gearshifting can be operated via + or -. On BEVs, the regenerative braking mode can be operated via + or -.

Steering Wheel Heating



Activate heating by pressing . Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.

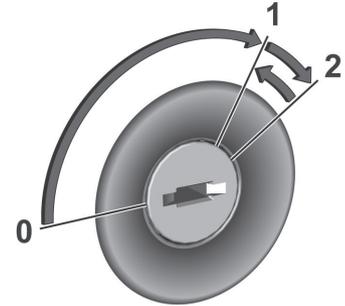
Horn



Press . The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 30 Km/h (19 mph), in forward or reverse gear. This function cannot be deactivated.

Ignition switch

Ignition Switch

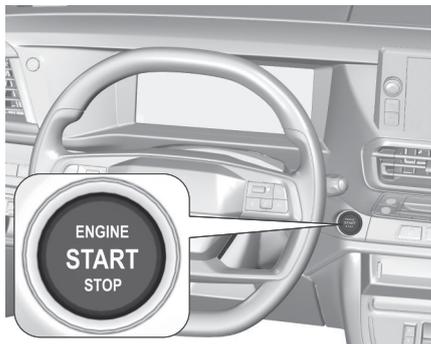


- 0: ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
- 1: ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable
- 2: engine start: release key after engine has been started

 **Danger**

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

Power Button



The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

Wipers and washers

Windshield Wiper And Washer

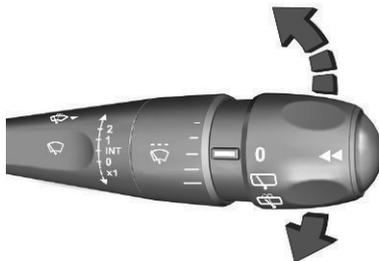
Note

With the wiper lever in position **AUTO** or **INT**, 1 or 2 and the ignition switched on after more than one minute: When the outside temperature is below +3°C, the windshield wiper activates only at a speed above 10 km/h. When the outside temperature is above +3°C, the windshield wiper activates immediately.

Note

In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced at a speed below 5 km/h and returns to the original frequency at a speed above 10 km/h.

Windshield wiper with adjustable wiper frequency



- 0: off
- 1: normal
- 2: fast
- INT: intermittent wiping
- x1: single wipe

Do not use if the windshield is frozen.
Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable wiper frequency



Wiper lever in position **INT**, it is possible to select five frequency levels by turning the ring.

When selecting a lower frequency, a confirmation wiping is given.

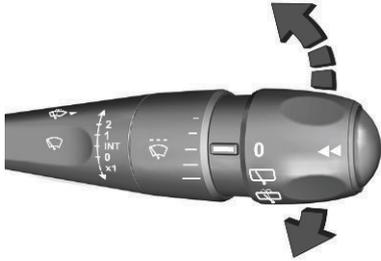
Windshield washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wiper wipes a few times.

Rain Sensing Wiper Control

Windshield wiper with rain sensor



- 0: off
- 1: normal
- 2: fast
- AUTO: automatic wiping
- x1: single wipe

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper. Do not use if the windshield is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity.

The longest dash indicates the highest sensitivity and the shortest dash indicates the lowest sensitivity.

A wiping cycle confirms the selection.

Rear Window Wiper And Washer

Rear window wiper



- 0: off
-  intermittent wiping
-  screen wash

Do not use if the rear window is frozen or when a bicycle carrier is used.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windshield wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app in the Info Display.

To activate the rear wiper the next time the ignition is switched on, turn to position 0 and back to .

Rear window washer

Select .

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes as long as

 is selected.

Exterior Lights

Warning

Do not look directly into the LED headlights. Risk of eye damage.

Lighting Controls



Turn adjuster wheel:

AUTO : automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlights

 : sidelights

 : low beam/high beam

Automatic Light Control



When the adjuster wheel is in position AUTO and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

Automatic headlight activation

Turn the adjuster wheel in position: **AUTO** During poor lighting conditions the headlights are switched on. Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

High Beam



To activate or deactivate the high beam, pull the lever beyond the resistance point.

High Beam Assist

The system switches from low beam to high beam and vice versa to prevent glaring. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain set after the ignition is switched on again.

Activation

The high beam assist can be activated via the vehicle settings menu on the Info Display.

High beam is switched on automatically in dark surroundings at a speed above 45 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue  illuminates when high beam is on.

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- Camera detects heavy fog.
- Rear fog light is switched on.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles are detected by the camera.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated via the vehicle settings menu on the Info Display.

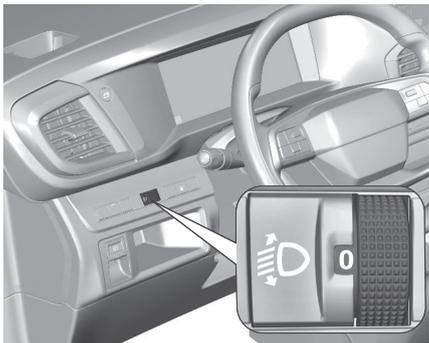
Headlight Flash



To activate the headlight flash, pull the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Headlight Height Adjustment

Manual adjustment



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel  to required position.

- 0: front seats occupied
- 1: up to five people or partial load
- 2: all seats occupied or driver and intermediate load
- 3: driver and permissible max. load

Headlights when driving abroad

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps

must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact your dealer or a qualified workshop.

Turn Signals



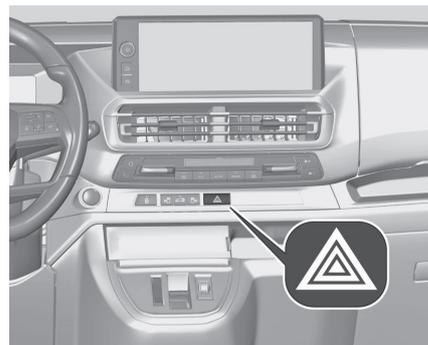
- up: right turn light
- down: left turn light

A resistance point can be felt when moving the indicator lever. Constant flashing is activated when the indicator lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position. After 20 seconds the volume

of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 80 km/h.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the indicator lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released. To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Emergency Signals



Operated by pressing . Hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically in the following situations:

- Braking in an emergency (depending on the force of deceleration).
- In the event of an accident.

They are switched off the first time you accelerate or if you press ▲.

Automatic Lighting

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Caution

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.

The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Front Foglamps



Turn the control wheel once to activate or deactivate the front fog light.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

Rear Foglamps

Depending on version:



Turn the adjuster wheel forwards/backwards to switch on/off.



Turn the adjuster wheel forwards / backwards to switch on / off the front fog light.

Turn the adjuster wheel two times forwards / backwards to switch on / off the rear fog light.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position $\text{D} \text{D} \text{D}$: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

Reverse Lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically when the engine is running or by adjusting **0** or **AUTO**.

The system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Automatic Headlights Dipping

Available only on versions equipped with Full LED technology headlamps.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **AUTO** position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

Warning

This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

Note

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h). When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Welcome Lighting

Some or all of the following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- tail lights
- interior lights

The number of activated lights depends on the surrounding light conditions. The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on. The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- Driver Information Centre

Exit Lighting

The following lights are switched on when the ignition is switched off:

- headlights
- interior lights

- centre console lighting

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app  in the Info Display.

Corner Lights



Activated at a speed of up to 40 km/h when turning off. Depending on the steering angle or the activation of the turn lights the front fog light illuminate the direction of travel.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Interior lights

Courtesy Lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

Front and rear courtesy light



Operate rocker switch:

 : automatic switching on and off

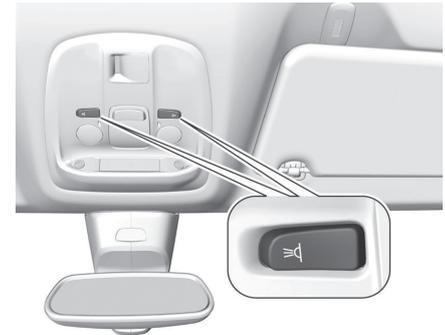
press  : on

press  : off



Illustration shows rear courtesy light.

Reading Lights



Operated by pressing  and  in the courtesy lights.



Illustration shows rear courtesy lights

Interior Ambient Lights

The brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in the settings app  in the Info Display when the exterior lights are on:

- instrument panel illumination
- Info Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Load Compartment Lighting

The lower load compartment lights come on when the load compartment is opened.



One of the load compartment lights can also be used as a torch. Pull the torch out from the top of the recess.

Sunvisor Lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Sunroof

Glass Panel

Sunblinds



The sunblinds are operated manually. Slide the respective sunblind to the desired position.

Interior Storage / Interior Features

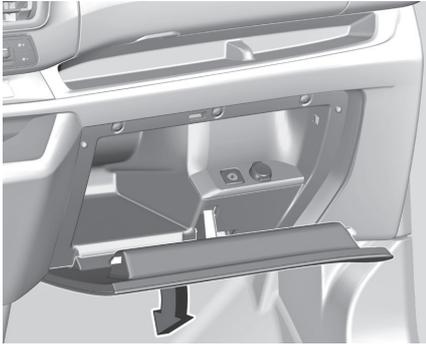
Storage Compartments



Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments.

Glove Compartment



To open the glovebox pull the handle. Some versions have a power outlet and the switch for the front passenger airbag deactivation in the storage compartment. The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

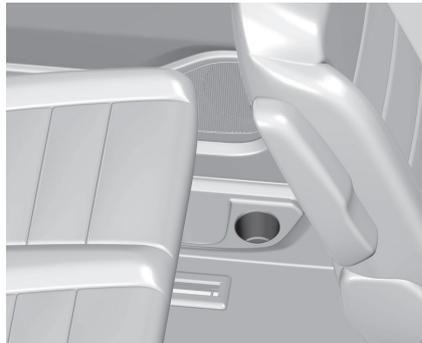
Cupholders

Front cupholder



Cup holders are located at the sides of the instrument panel.

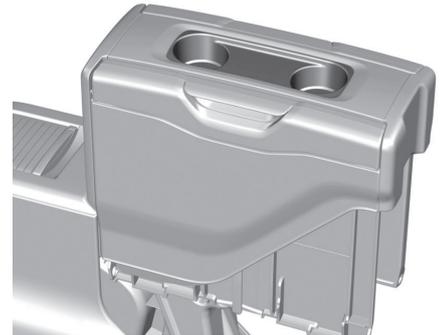
Rear cupholder



A cupholder for the second row seat can be located in the storage compartment in the footwell.

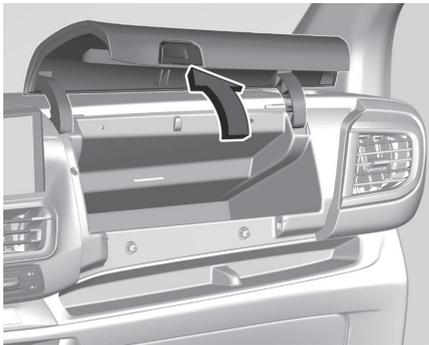


Cupholders for the third row seats can be located in the sides of the load compartment.

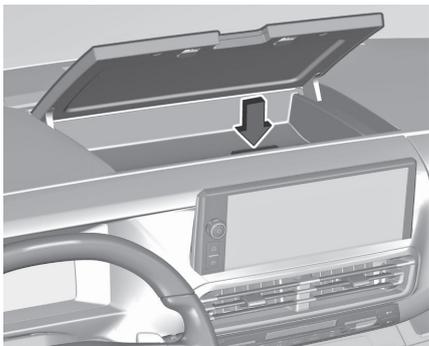


Fold up the multifunctional table.

Front Storage



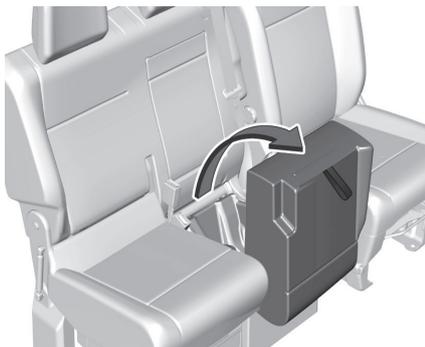
To open the storage compartment press the button and open the cover. Some versions have a glovebox cooler in the storage compartment.



To open the storage compartment press the button and open the cover.

Seatback Storage

Storage box

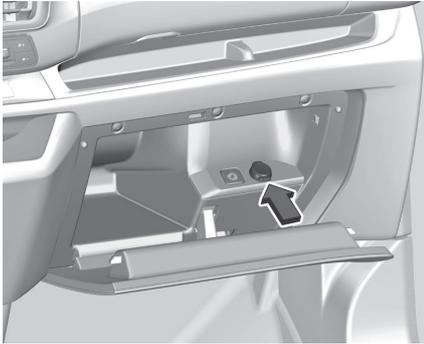


There may be a storage box under the centre bench seat next to the driver seat. Lift up the seat cushion by pulling the handle.



There may be a storage box under the centre and left bench seat. Lift up the seat cushion. Depending on version the storage box can be removed from the back to accommodate long objects.

12V Power Outlets



A 12 V power outlet is located in the glovebox.



A 12 V power outlet may be located on the third row left side trim.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.



A 220 V power outlet may be located underneath the front passenger seat.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

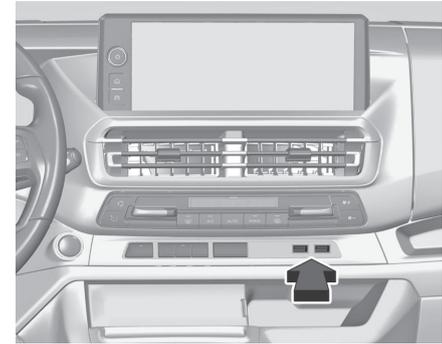
With ignition off, the power outlets are deactivated. Additionally the power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

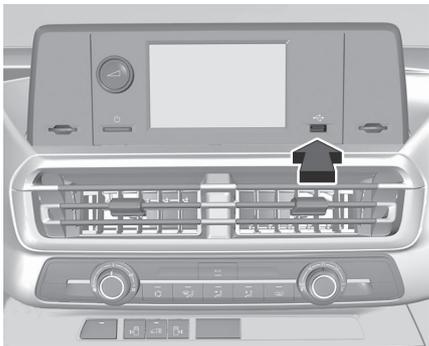
Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

USB Ports



Depending on version, two USB ports are located in the instrument panel.

The left USB port can charge external devices and provide a data connection to the Infotainment system. The right USB port can only charge external devices.



Depending on version, a USB port is located next to the Info Display. It can charge external devices and provide a data connection to the Infotainment system.



Two USB ports may be located at the lower left side of the B-pillar. Both USB ports can only charge external devices.

Note

The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

Wireless Phone Charger

Warning

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

Warning

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.

To charge a mobile device:



1. Remove all objects from the charging device.
2. Place the mobile device on the charging area. Note that the mobile device must be placed between the positioning aids.

Qi compatible mobile devices can be charged inductively.

On some mobile devices, a back cover with an integrated coil or a jacket may be required to use inductive charging.

Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.

In the event that the mobile device is not charging properly, rotate it 180° and place it on the charging device again.

Status LED



The LED indicates the current charging status.

Illuminates green

The mobile device is charging.

Flashes yellow

The mobile device has not been centred properly in the charging zone or an unknown object has been detected in the charging zone.

Illuminates yellow

There is a problem with the mobile device's battery or a fault of the inductive charger has been detected. If the problem persists, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Load Compartment

Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the seats in the second and third row.

Vehicle version with seat benches in second and third row

When loading the following has to be observed:

- Only store objects on seats of the third row folded down to the table position, when the seats in the second row are also folded down to the table position.



- Bench seat in the second or third row in the tilted position: the outer seat must not be occupied.



- Single bench seat in the second or third row in the tilted position: the center seat must not be occupied.



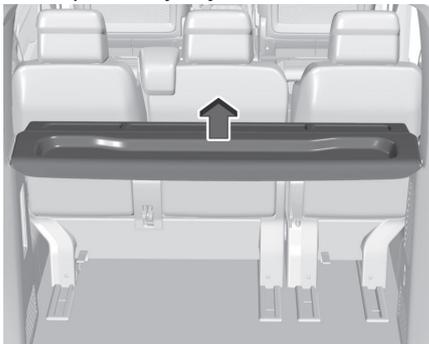
- Seat in the second row folded down to the table position: respective seat in the third row must not be occupied.



- Seat in the second row in the tilted position: respective seat in the third row must not be occupied.

Load compartment cover

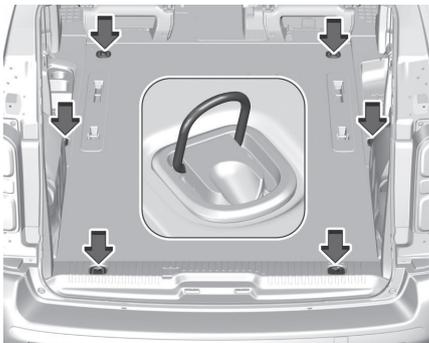
Do not place any objects on the cover.



Raise the load compartment cover to remove it.

To install the load compartment cover insert it in the retainers on both sides.

Lashing eyes



The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

Lashing eyes may be located on the vehicle floor. The number and location of the lashing eyes may vary depending on the vehicle.

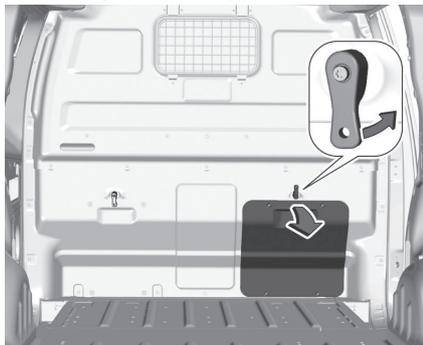
Cargo management system

Flap behind the passenger seat

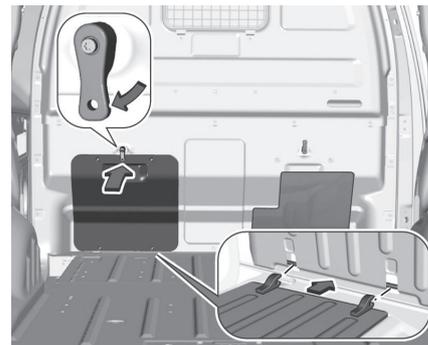
Depending on version, a partition behind the front seats protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.

There may be a flap in the partition behind the passenger seat which can be removed to accommodate long objects. If the outer passenger seat is folded and the flap is open, the centre seat has to stay free.

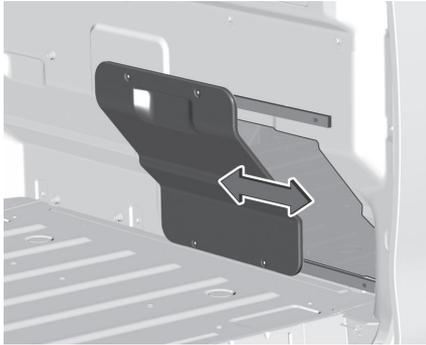
Removing the flap (type A)



1. Release the locking device, lower the flap and then remove it.
2. Stow the flap behind the driver's seat. Turn the locking device upwards. Put the hinges of the flap in their housing, lift the flap and close the locking device.



Sliding the flap (type B)



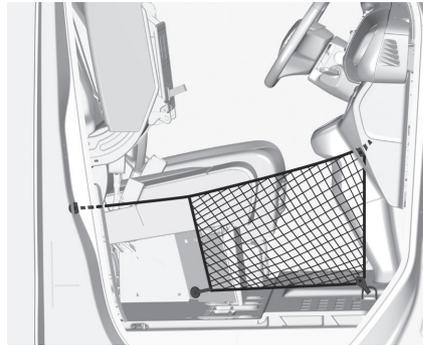
Slide the flap to the side. It is kept in position by magnets.

Fitting the protective net

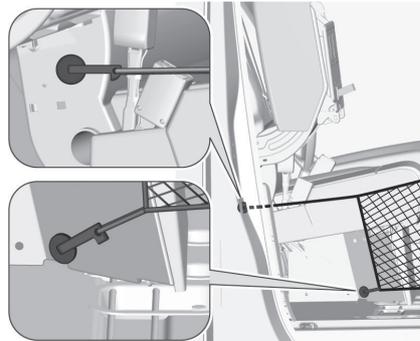
The protective net must be installed whenever the bench seat of the front passenger side is folded and the partition flap is open.

1. Lift the seat cushion of the bench seat of the front passenger side.

See the section seat folding in the chapter Front Seats.



2. Fix the net like shown on the picture.



3. Fit the attachment in the opening.

To lock the attachment turn it clockwise a quarter turn.



4. Attach the hooks to the lashing eyes in the glovebox and on the floor.

After transportation remove the protective net and fold down the seat.

Second row bench seat in the commercial vehicle

The bench seat in the second row can be folded to increase the load compartment.

Warning

When seats are being adjusted or folded, keep hands and feet away from the moving area. Risk of injury.

Ensure that there are no objects on the anchor points or rails.

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Folding



1. Tilt the head restraints to the front. Pull the loop upwards to unlock the bench seat.
2. Raise the bench seat taking the handle and fold the bench seat to the front until it is engaged.

Unfolding



1. To restore the bench seat to the original position pull the loop to unlock it.
2. Take the handle to fold the bench seat to the back until it is engaged in the original position. Tilt up the head restraints.

Safety net

Safety net behind the seats

Depending on version, the safety net can be installed behind the second row seats, the third row seats or behind the front seats.

To increase the loading capacity the seats behind the safety net can be folded or removed.

Seat backrests in front of the safety net must be raised up.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

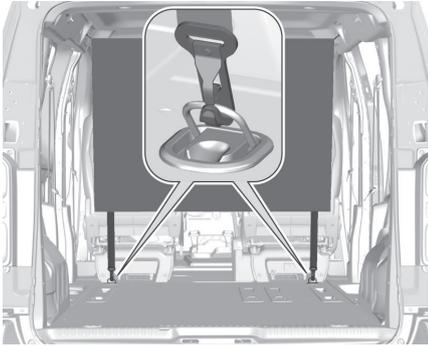
Installation in the roof frame



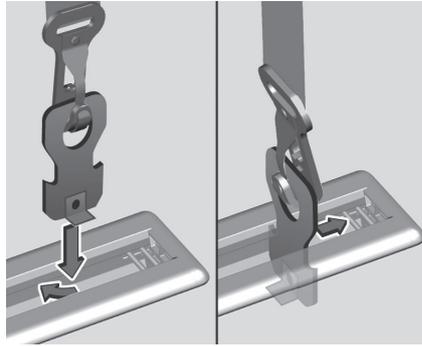
1. There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame. If present, open the covers.
2. Suspend and engage the rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.

Installation on the floor

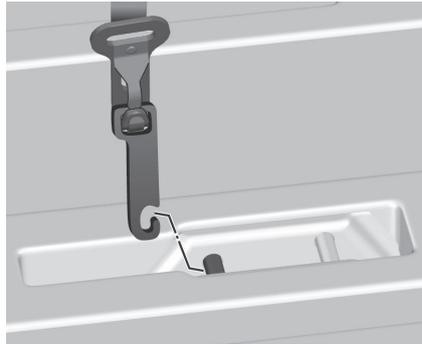
1. a) Installation with lashing eyes. Attach the hooks of safety net straps in the lashing eyes.



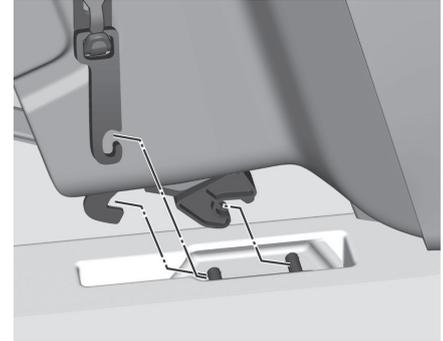
- b) Installation with rear seats on rails
Insert the fixings in the floor anchorages on both sides. To lock the fixings turn them clockwise a quarter turn. Place them as close as possible to the end of the rail.



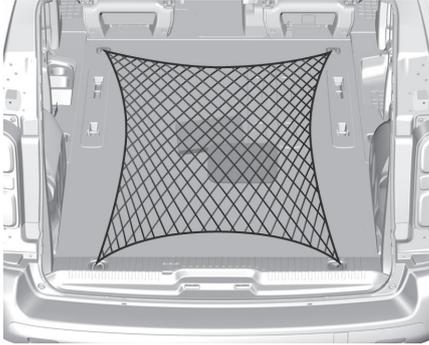
- c) Installation with fixed rear seats
Insert the fixings in the floor anchorages on both sides.



It is possible to install the safety net together with folded seats.



2. Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.

Safety net on the floor

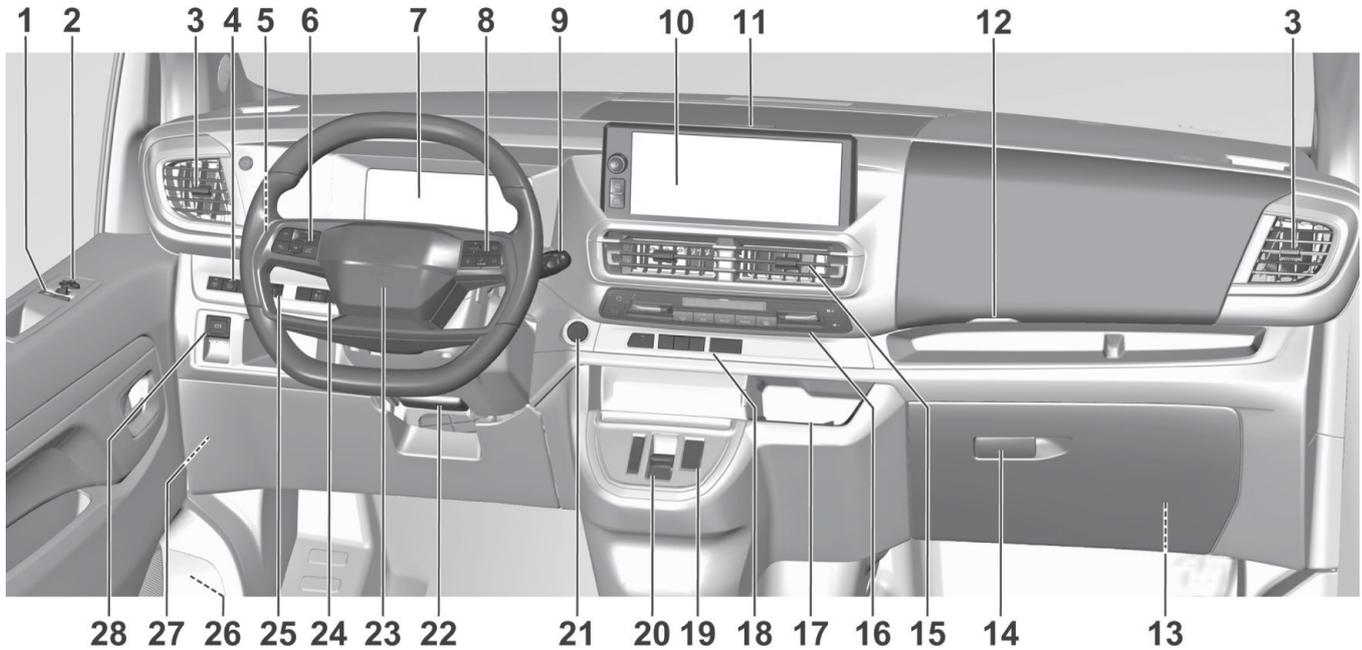
Attached to the lashing eyes on the rear floor, it allows objects to be held down.

Dashboard Instruments And Control

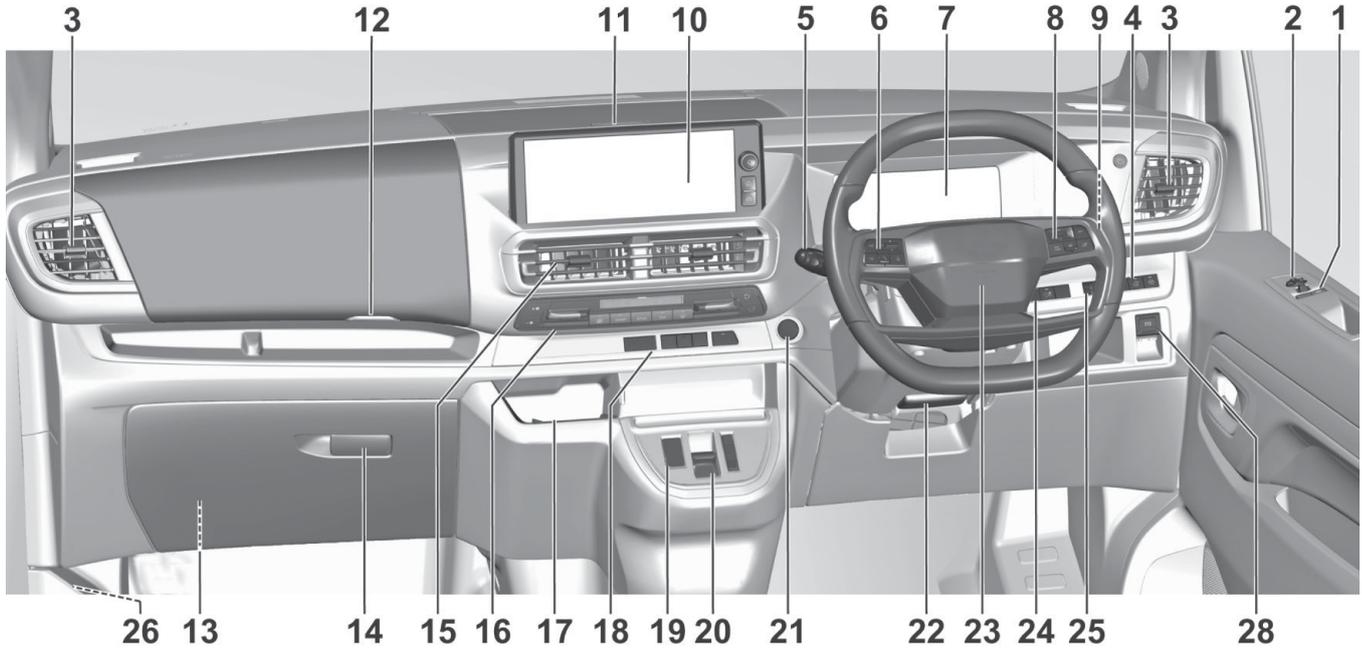
Instrument Panel	85	Power Steering Fault Warning Light.....	97	AdBlue Warning Light.....	101
Instrument Cluster	88	Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light.....	97	Engine Check-Malfunction Indicator (MIL) Warning Light.....	102
Speedometer	88	Oil Pressure Warning Light.....	97	Engine Preheating Warning Light.....	102
Odometer	88	Charging Cable Connected Warning Light.....	97	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Light.....	102
Trip odometer	89	Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light.....	98	Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) Warning Light.....	102
Tachometer	89	System Malfunction Warning Light.....	98	Parking sensors Warning Light.....	103
Fuel level gauge	89	Service Warning Light.....	98	Tortoise mode Warning Light.....	103
Hydrogen gauge	90	Traction Battery Temperature Warning Light.....	98	Pedestrian Horn Warning Light.....	103
High-voltage battery charge status	91	Traction Battery Fault Warning Light.....	98	Water in Fuel Filter Warning Light....	103
Trip computer	91	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light.....	99	Particle Filter Warning Light.....	103
Power flow	91	Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD) Warning Light.....	99	Automatic Low Beam Indicator Light.....	103
Comfort consumption gauge	92	Electric Park Brake Applied Light.....	99	Hill Assist Descent Control Warning Light.....	103
Engine coolant temperature gauge	92	Electric Park Brake Warning Light.....	99	Turn Signal Indicator Light.....	104
Engine oil level monitor	92	Active Emergency Braking Warning Light.....	99	Stop-Start Active Indicator Light.....	104
Service display	92	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) / Traction Control System (TC) Active Warning Light.....	100	Ready To Drive Indicator Light.....	104
Widgets	93	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) / Traction Control System (TC) OFF Warning Light.....	100	Automatic High Beam Indicator Light.....	104
Warning, lights, indicators and messages	93	Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Warning Light.....	100	High Beam Indicator Light.....	104
Control indicators.....	93	Service Lane Keep Assist Warning Light.....	100	Front Fog Warning Lights.....	104
Major Fault - Stop The Vehicle.....	96	Low Fuel Warning Light.....	101	Climate controls	104
Air Bag Warning Light.....	96			AC On-Off Control	104
Brake Warning Light.....	96			Maximum AC On-Off Control	105
Battery Charge Warning Light.....	97			Demisting and defrosting the windows	105
Door Open Warning Light.....	97			Recirculation control	106
Drowsy Driver Detected Warning Light.....	97			Heating and ventilation system	106
				Automatic AC control	107
				Temperature Control	110

Air vents	111
Fixed air vents	112
Display	112
Instrument cluster	112
Info Display	113

Instrument Panel



1. Power windows
2. Exterior mirrors
3. Side air vents
4. Lane keep assist
Descent control system
Heated steering wheel
5. High beam
Headlight flash
Turn lights
Fog lights
Parking lights
6. Cruise control system
Speed limiter
Adaptive cruise control
7. Driver Information Centre
8. Infotainment controls
9. Windscreen wiper and washer
Rear window wiper and washer
10. Info Display
11. Front storage
12. Front storage
13. Airbag deactivation
Power outlet
14. Glovebox
15. Centre air vents
16. Climate control system
17. Inductive charging
18. Central locking system
Automatic locking
Electric child locks
Hazard warning flashers
Power sliding doors
19. Drive modes
20. Selector drive unit
Selector automatic transmission
21. Power button
22. Steering wheel adjustment
23. Horn
24. Temperature preconditioning
Anti-theft system
Heated windscreen
25. Headlight range adjustment
26. Bonnet release lever
27. Fuse box
28. Electric parking brake



1. Power windows
2. Exterior mirrors
3. Side air vents
4. Lane keep assist
Descent control system
Heated steering wheel
5. High beam
Headlight flash
Turn lights
Fog lights
Parking lights
6. Cruise control system
Speed limiter
Adaptive cruise control
7. Driver Information Centre
8. Infotainment controls
9. Windscreen wiper and washer
Rear window wiper and washer
10. Info Display
11. Front storage
12. Front storage
13. Airbag deactivation
Power outlet
14. Glovebox
15. Centre air vents
16. Climate control system
17. Inductive charging
18. Central locking system
Automatic locking
Electric child locks
Hazard warning flashers
Power sliding doors
19. Drive modes
20. Selector drive unit
Selector automatic transmission
21. Power button
22. Steering wheel adjustment
23. Horn
24. Temperature preconditioning
Anti-theft system
Heated windscreen
25. Headlight range adjustment
26. Bonnet release lever
28. Electric parking brake

Instrument Cluster

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Type A



Type B



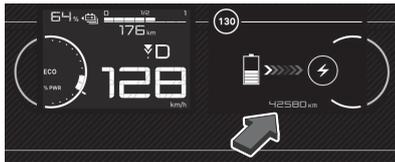
Odometer

The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

Type A



Type B



Trip Odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Two trip odometer pages are selectable in the trip / autonomy information menu for different trips.

Trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km.

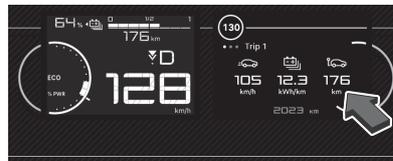


Press button for two seconds to reset the trip odometer.

Type A



Type B



Tachometer

Displays the engine speed.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

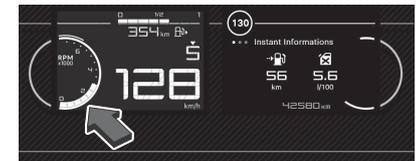
Caution

If the indicator is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine can be damaged.

Type A



Type B



Fuel Level Gauge

Control indicator  or  illuminates yellow if the fuel level is low. Never run the fuel tank dry.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler flap is located. The top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity, due to the remaining fuel in the tank.

Type A



Type B



Hydrogen Gauge



Displays the hydrogen level in the tank.

If the control indicator  illuminates yellow, refuel the tank immediately. If additionally the charging level of the high voltage battery is too low,  illuminates yellow.

Combined range



The combined range (high voltage battery and hydrogen tank) is shown. The range is calculated from the current hydrogen level, the charging level of the high voltage battery and from the current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling or charging, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

Information menu

Instantaneous consumption

Display of the instantaneous consumption of combined energy (fuel cell and high voltage battery).

Odometer

The recorded overall distance.

Trip pages



To reset a trip, press the button for more than two seconds when the desired trip is displayed.



Average speed

Display of average speed.

Average consumption

Display of the average consumption of combined energy (fuel cell and high voltage battery). After a reset it starts with a default value.

Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the reset.

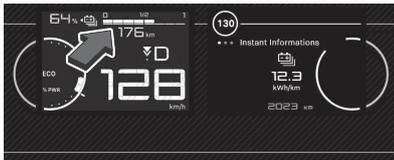
High-Voltage Battery Charge Status

Displays the high-voltage battery state of charge.

Type A



Type B



Trip Computer

The trip computer displays current trip information since the last reset.



Pressing the button displays the following tabs in turn:

- current information
 - total range
 - current consumption
 - time counter for the stop-start mode
 - total distance recorder
- trip 1
 - average speed
 - average consumption
 - distance travelled
- trip 2
 - average speed
 - average consumption

- distance travelled

The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

To reset a trip, press the button for more than two seconds when the desired trip is displayed.

Power Flow

The power indicator gauge informs about the current energy situation of the vehicle.

Charge: High-voltage battery is being charged with energy resulting from braking or deceleration of the vehicle

Eco: An optimum in energy is accessible in all driving modes

Power: Vehicle is driven in a dynamic driving style with focus on performance.

Type A



Type B



Comfort Consumption Gauge

The comfort consumption gauge informs about the current electric consumption caused by the following thermal consumers:

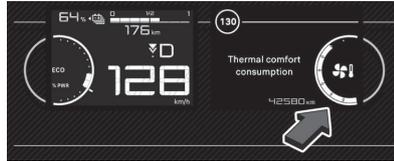
- heating
- air conditioning
- heated windscreen
- heated rear window
- heated seats

If the drive mode Eco mode is selected, the performance of the thermal consumers is reduced.

Type A



Type B



Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Displays the coolant temperature. The red zone indicates that the operating temperature of the engine is too high.

Caution

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Type A



Type B



Engine Oil Level Monitor

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition.

A proper state of engine oil level is confirmed.

If engine oil level is low,  flashes and warning message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Depending on the version,  flashes in the Driver Information Centre. Confirm engine oil level by using the oil dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.

A fault of measurement is indicated by  or a message in the Driver Information Centre together with . Check engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.

Service Display

The service system informs the driver when to change the engine oil and filter or a vehicle service is required. Based on

driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change is required can vary considerably.

A required service due is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for several seconds after switching on the ignition. If no service is required for the next 3000 km or more no service information appears in the display.

If service is required within the next 3000 km, the remaining distance to the next service due, the distance travelled since the last service due or the time period that remains to the next service due is indicated for several seconds.

Simultaneously symbol  illuminates temporarily as reminder.

If service is required in less than 1000 km, the remaining distance to the next service due, the distance travelled since the last service due or the time period that remains to the next service due is indicated for several seconds. Simultaneously  illuminates permanently as reminder.

Overdue service is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre which indicates the overdue distance.  flashes and then illuminates permanently until service is executed.

Reset of service interval

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to ensure proper functionality. It is recommended to seek the assistance of a workshop.

Retrieving service information

The status of the service information can be retrieved at any time via the Info Display. Press **Check** in the vehicle settings menu. The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

Widgets

A widget is the indication of specific information or gauge, e.g. radio information, navigation information or the engine coolant temperature gauge.



The Driver Information Centre can display one widget per page, the Info Display can contain several widgets.

To add a widget to a page, touch .

Warning, lights, indicators and messages

Control Indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

red :	danger, important reminder
yellow :	warning, information, fault
green :	confirmation of activation
blue :	confirmation of activation
white :	confirmation of activation
grey :	system paused, at least one system limitation has been detected

Control indicators are located in the Driver Information Centre.

Overview

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

- (1): only for information.
- (2): information and warning.
- (3): seek the assistance of a workshop.
- (4): stop engine, leave vehicle and seek the assistance of a workshop.
- (5): have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Red warning and indicator lamps

-  Stop engine
(4)
-  Hydrogen leakage
(2)/(5)
-  Engine coolant temperature high
(4)



Engine oil pressure
(4)



Service vehicle soon
(5)



HV charging cable connected
(2)



High voltage battery temperature high
(4)



12 V battery charging system
(4)



Door open
(2)



Seat belt reminder
(2)



Electric parking brake
(1)/(5)



Brake system
(5)



Rain sensor
(1)



Side blind spot alert
(2)



Airbag activated
(2)



Airbag deactivated
(2)



Gear shifting
(2)



Low hydrogen level
(2)

Orange warning and indicator lamps



Service vehicle soon
(5)



Power steering
(4)

	Preheating (1)
	Exhaust filter (1)/(3)
	Water in fuel filter (2)
	Low fuel (2)
	HV battery level low (2)
	HV reduced engine power (2)
	HV pedestrian safety alert fault (3)
	Malfunction indicator light (5)
	System check (4)

	AdBlue (1)
	Fuel cell system fault (2)/(3)
	Automatic operation of electric parking brake deactivated (1)
	Electric parking brake fault (5)
	Braking (4)
	Active emergency braking (2)/(3)
	Antilock brake system (ABS) (2)
	Electronic stability control and traction control system (2)/(5)

	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system deactivated (2)
	Traffic sign assistant (2)/(3)
	Lane keep assist (2)
	Driver alert (2)/(3)
	Airbag and belt tensioners (5)
	Tyre deflation detection system (2)/(3)
	Parking assist (1)/(3)
	Stop-start system deactivated (1)



Rear fog light

(1)

Green warning and indicator lamps

Stop-start system

(1)

READY

Vehicle ready

(1)



Descent control system

(2)



Turn lights

(1)



Daytime running lights/side-lights

(1)



Low beam

(1)



High beam assist

(1)



Front fog lights

(1)

Blue warning and indicator lamps

High beam

(1)

Major Fault - Stop The Vehicle



Illuminates red

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.

Air Bag Warning Light



Illuminates red. Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is set to the "ON" position.

In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!



Illuminates red. Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control is set to the "OFF" position.

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).



Illuminates orange. Fixed.

One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.

Brake Warning Light



Illuminates red. Fixed.

The electric parking brake is applied.



Illuminates red. Flashing.

Application/release is faulty.



Illuminates red. Fixed.

The parking brake is applied or not properly released.



Illuminates red. Fixed.

The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.



Illuminated orange. Fixed.

A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.
Drive carefully.

Battery Charge Warning Light

 Illuminates red. Fixed.

The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).

Door Open Warning Light

 Illuminates red. Fixed, associated with a message indicating which access is open.

An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

A door, the boot, the tailgate or the opening rear screen is still open (depending on version).

Close whichever access is open.

If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand side-hinged door, this warning lamp will **not** indicate that it is open.

Drowsy Driver Detected Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The system is deactivated.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Power Steering Fault Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
A minor fault in the power steering has been detected. Drive carefully at moderate speed.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

 Illuminates red. Fixed.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Oil Pressure Warning Light

 Illuminates red. Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.

Charging Cable Connected Warning Light

 Illuminates red. Fixed when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

 Illuminates red. Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light



Illuminates red. Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).

System Malfunction Warning Light



Illuminates red. Fixed.

A fault involving the electric motor or traction battery has been detected.

Service Warning Light



Illuminates orange. Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/ are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.

Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.

You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.



Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/ are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.

Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.



Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed"**.

The audible warning system is in failure.

The following driving aids may be disturbed or unavailable:

- Road signs recognition.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning.



Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Parking brake fault"**.

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.

Traction Battery Temperature Warning Light



Illuminates red. Fixed, combined with the STOP warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The traction battery's temperature is too high.

Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

Traction Battery Fault Warning Light



Illuminates red. Fixed, combined with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

The traction battery has a fault.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD) Warning Light

  Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.

Electric Park Brake Applied Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.
If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- Start the engine.

- Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- Release the control and the brake pedal.

Electric Park Brake Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.

 Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:

- Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- Park on a level surface.
- With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

Active Emergency Braking Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has been deactivated via the touch screen.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted.

 Fixed.

The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) / Traction Control System (TC) Active Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Flashing.
ESC/TC system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
ESC/TC system has a fault.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) / Traction Control System (TC) OFF Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The system is deactivated.
The ESC/TC system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

 Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Service Lane Keep Assist Warning Light

 The system has a fault.

Low Fuel Warning Light



Illuminates orange. Fixed, with the blocks lit flashing, accompanied by an audible signal (with the matrix instrument panel) or Fixed, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (except with the matrix instrument panel). When it first comes on, there are **approximately 5 litres of fuel** remaining in the tank (reserve).

Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.

Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.

Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

AdBlue® Warning Light



Illuminates orange. On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).

Top up the AdBlue®.



Illuminates orange. Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).

Promptly top up the AdBlue®.



Illuminates orange. Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).

You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**.



Illuminates orange. Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.

To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®.

It is essential to add at least 10 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.



Illuminates orange. Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

A malfunction of the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system has been detected. This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.



Illuminates orange.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.



Illuminates orange.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine selfdiagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).

Engine Check-Malfunction Indicator (MIL) Warning Light



Illuminates orange. Flashing.

The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.



Illuminates orange. Fixed.

The emissions control system has a fault. The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.



Illuminates orange. Fixed.

A minor engine fault has been detected.



Illuminates orange. Fixed.

A major engine fault has been detected.

Engine Preheating Warning Light



Illuminates orange. Temporarily on (up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).

When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.

Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.

When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:

- the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
- the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.

If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Light



Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The pressure in one or more tires is too low.

Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.

Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.

The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.

Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.

Check the tire pressures as soon as possible.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) Warning Light



Illuminates orange. Temporarily on. The overspeed alert sound has been deactivated.



Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. The system has a fault.



Illuminates orange. Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**". The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Clean the front camera.

Parking sensors Warning Light

  Illuminates orange. Flashing.
The system detects an obstacle.

  Illuminates orange. Fixed,
accompanied by the display of a
message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

  Illuminates orange. Fixed,
accompanied by the display of the
message "**Parking Assistance Sensor
blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and
switch off the ignition.
Clean the front and/or rear sensors.

Tortoise mode Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The state of charge of the traction battery
is critical.
The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.

Pedestrian Horn Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
 Horn fault detected.

Water in Fuel Filter Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed.
The Diesel fuel filter contains water.
Risk of damaging the fuel injection
system!

Particle Filter Warning Light

 Illuminates orange. Fixed,
accompanied by an audible signal and a
message about the risk of particle filter
blockage.
The particle filter is nearing saturation.
As soon as traffic conditions allow,
regenerate the filter by driving at a speed
of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an
engine speed of above 2,500 rpm, until
the warning lamp goes off.

 Fixed, accompanied by an audible
signal and a message indicating that the
additive level in the particle filter is too
low.

The low level in the additive tank has
been reached.

Automatic Low Beam Indicator Light

 Illuminates green. Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Hill Assist Descent Control Warning Light

 Illuminates green. Fixed.
The system has been activated, but the
conditions for regulation are not met
(gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).
 Illuminates green. Flashing.
The function is regulating the speed of
the vehicle.
The vehicle is being braked; the brake
lamps come on during the descent.

Turn Signal Indicator Light



Illuminates green. Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Stop-Start Active Indicator Light



Illuminates green. Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.



Illuminates green. Flashing temporarily.

STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

Ready To Drive Indicator Light

READY

Illuminates green. Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive and the thermal comfort systems are available.

The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.

The lamp will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

Automatic High Beam Indicator Light



Illuminates green. Fixed.

The function has been activated via the vehicle's configuration menu.

The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

High Beam Indicator Light



Illuminates blue. Fixed.

The lamps are on.

Front Fog Warning Lights

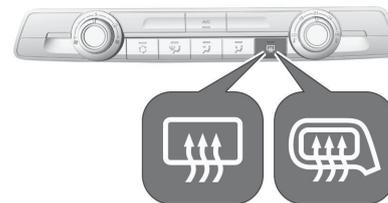


Illuminates green. Fixed.

The front foglamps are on.

Climate controls

AC On-Off Control



Controls for:

- temperature
- air distribution
- fan speed
- cooling A/C
- air recirculation
- heated rear window
- heated exterior mirrors

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning to the desired temperature.

HI : warm

LO : cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

 : to windscreen and front door windows

 : to head area via adjustable air vents

 : to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Cooling A/C

Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling. The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

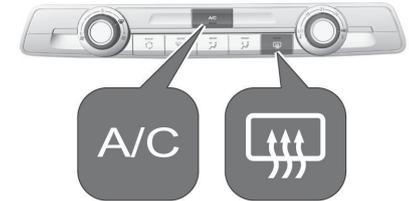
Maximum AC On-Off Control



Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on cooling **A/C**.
- Press  for air recirculation system on.
- Press  for air distribution.
- Set temperature control  to coldest level.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Demisting And Defrosting The Windows



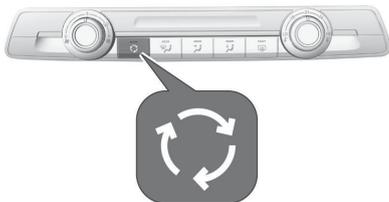
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Set temperature controller  to warmest level.
- Switch on cooling **A/C**, if required.
- Switch on heated rear window  or heated exterior mirrors .
- Switch on heated windscreen .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Note

If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected, an Autostop may be inhibited.

If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Recirculation Control



Press  to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

Warning

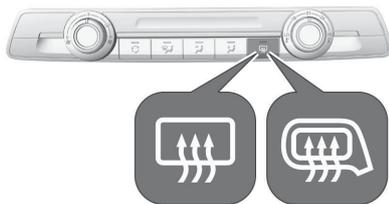
The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode.

In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside.

The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Heating And Ventilation System



Controls for:

- temperature 
- air distribution , , and 

- fan speed 
- air recirculation 
- heated rear window  or heated exterior mirrors 

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning  to the desired temperature.

HI: warm

LO: cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

 : to windscreen and front door windows

 : to head area via adjustable air vents

 : to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Fan speed



Adjust the air flow by turning  to the desired speed.
clockwise : increase
anticklockwise : decrease

Air recirculation system



Press  to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

Warning

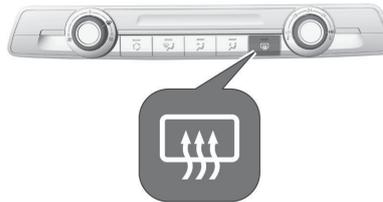
The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode.

In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside.

The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Demisting and defrosting



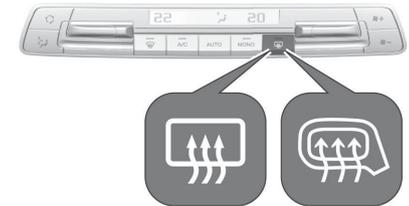
- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature controller  to warmest level.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.

- Switch on heated rear window and exterior mirrors  or switch on heated exterior mirrors .
- Switch on heated windscreen .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Automatic AC Control

The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.

In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.



Controls for:

- air recirculation 
- air distribution 

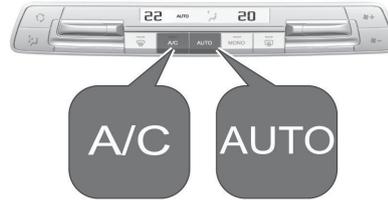
- rocker switch for adjusting the temperature on driver side and front passenger side



- demisting and defrosting 
- cooling **A/C**
- automatic mode **AUTO**
- dual zone temperature synchronisation **MONO**
- heated rear window  or heated exterior mirrors 
- fan speed  +  -

Activated functions are indicated by the LED in the respective control. The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Automatic mode AUTO



Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Air conditioning must be activated for optimal cooling and demisting. Press **A/C** to switch on air conditioning. The LED in the button indicates activation.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary ring. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

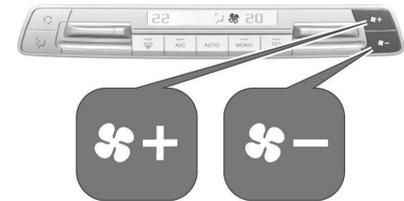
Press successively **AUTO** to select the desired automatic settings:

- **Soft Auto** for a soft and silent air distribution.
- **Auto** for thermal comfort and silent air distribution.
- **Auto Fast** for a dynamic and efficient air distribution.

Manual settings

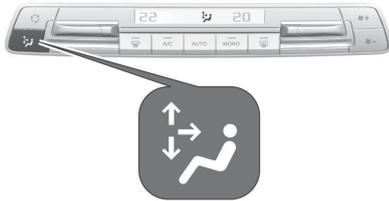
Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions:

Fan speed  +  -



Press  + to increase or  - to decrease the air flow.
To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO**.

Air distribution 



Press  successively until the desired direction of the air distribution is displayed:

-  : to windscreen and front door windows
-  : to head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents
-  : to front and rear foot well
-  : to windscreen and front door windows, to head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents, to front and rear foot well

Combinations of different air distribution options can be select by pressing  successively.

To return to automatic air distribution, press **AUTO**.

Temperature preselection



Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and the front passenger to the desired value using the left and right switch for adjusting the temperature.

Recommended temperature is 22 °C. Temperature is indicated in the display beside the switches for adjusting the temperature.

If the minimum temperature Lo is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling **A/C** is switched on. If the maximum temperature Hi is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

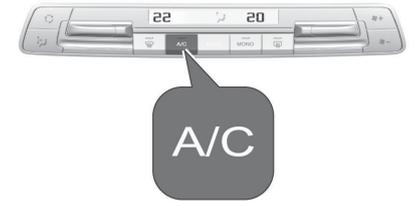
Note

If **A/C** is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Dual zone temperature synchronisation MONO

Press **MONO** to link passenger side temperature setting to the driver side / to remove the linking of the passenger side temperature setting to the driver side. The passenger side temperature setting is linked to the driver side if the LED in the button **MONO** is not illuminated.

Air conditioning A/C

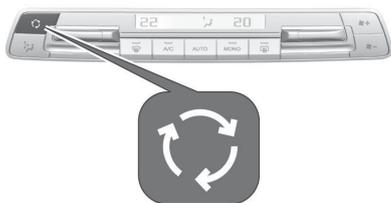


Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling. The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Manual air recirculation



Press  to activate the air recirculation mode.  is shown in the display to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate recirculation mode.

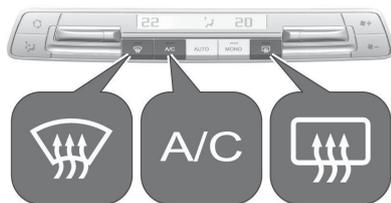
Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which

may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Demisting and defrosting the windows



- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Air conditioning and automatic mode are automatically switched on. The LED in the button **A/C** illuminates, AUTO is shown in the display.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.

- Switch on heated rear window .
- Switch on heated windscreen .
- To return to previous mode, press  again.

Note

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Deactivation of electronic climate control system

Press  - subsequently until the electronic climate control system is deactivated.

Temperature Control

The temperature preconditioning allows to heat the vehicle's interior and to ventilate the vehicle's interior with ambient air.

The temperature preconditioning can be programmed using the Infotainment system.

This function is also available via the MyOpel App.

Note

The temperature preconditioning is only activated if the ignition is off and the vehicle is locked.

If the charging level of the high voltage battery is below 30%, the temperature preconditioning is not activated.

When the vehicle is plugged in, battery charging takes precedence over preconditioning.

Consequently, it can only be activated if the battery is charged above a threshold fixed at 80%.

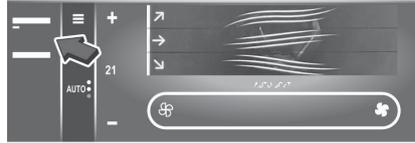
If a recurrent heating / ventilation is programmed and two heating / ventilation procedures are carried out without operating the vehicle, the programming is deactivated.

Setting timer

Note

Several timers can be programmed and saved. It is recommended to programme temperature preconditioning with the vehicle plugged in, in order to optimise the long-term performance of the high voltage battery.

Navigation system / Multimedia



Press **MENU** on the climate control panel or touch  on the Info Display to open the climate settings.

Touch  and then select the preconditioning settings menu.

Select **+** to define a new timer or touch  next to a timer to edit it.

Activate the timer.

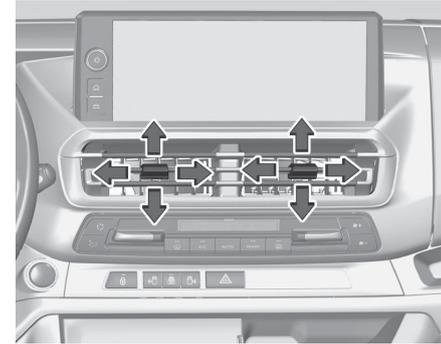
To delete a timer, select the desired timer and press  at the lower left corner of the screen.

The heating / ventilation procedure starts approx. 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is plugged in, or 20 minutes before the programmed time when it is not plugged in, and is maintained ten minutes after it.

Air Vents

Adjustable air vents

Air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, swivel the slats inwards.

Outer air vents in the instrument panel

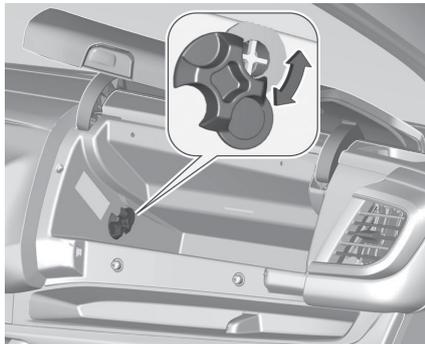
Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, swivel the slats outwards.

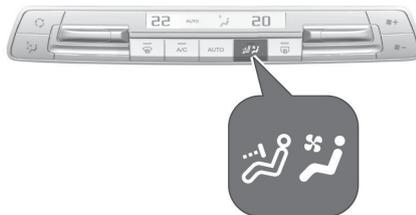
At least two air vents must be open while cooling is on.

 **Warning**

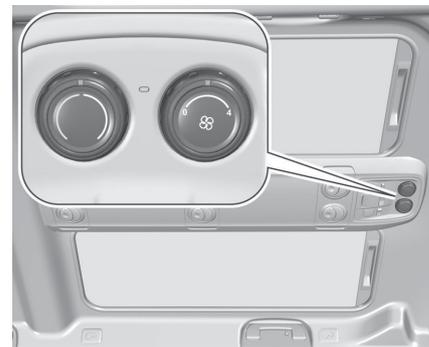
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Air vent in the glovebox

Turn the slider up or down in order to close or open the air vent.

Rear air vents in the ceiling

To activate the distribution of climatized / heated air via the rear air vents, press



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

Adjust the air flow to select the desired speed.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, the door windows and in the foot wells.

Display**Instrument Cluster**

The Driver Information Centre is located on the instrument cluster.

Depending on the version, different instrument clusters are available.

In addition to warning lights, gauges and indicators, the following information is available:

- trip odometer
- gear shift indication
- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance messages
- pop-up messages
- infotainment information

Type A



Type B



Pages



Press the button to scroll through several on-board pages or to close a pop-up message.

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning chime. Press to confirm a message.

Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Info Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Info Display. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

Vehicles with navigation system

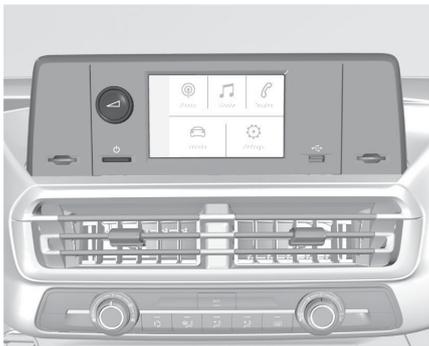
The vehicle recognises low emission zones. An audible message is given when entering or exiting a low emission zone and an icon will be shown on the navigation map.

Info Display

The Info Display can indicate:

- time
- outside temperature
- date
- Infotainment system
- indication of rear view camera
- indication of panoramic view system
- navigation
- vehicle and system messages
- settings for vehicle personalisation

Radio (Infotainment system)



Press  to switch on the display.

Touch  to select system settings (units, language, time and date).

Touch  to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch  on the display to return to the previous page.

Navigation System / Multimedia



Selecting menus and settings

There are three options to operate the display:

- via buttons beside the display
- by touching the touchscreen with the finger
- via the voice assistant

Button and touch operation

Press  to switch on the display.

Press  to display the home screen.

Press  to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Touch required menu display icon or a function with the finger.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch  or  on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting.

Personalisation

The Info Display can be personalised via the personalisation menu.



Several pages can be created by choosing widgets to be displayed.

Energy flow

This menu displays the current energy flow within the electric system.

The components will be highlighted when they are active.

1. Press 
2. Touch 
3. Select **Energy Flow**

Different colours show which engine is used and whether energy is regenerated.

- green: regenerating energy
- blue: electric engine operating

Infotainment System

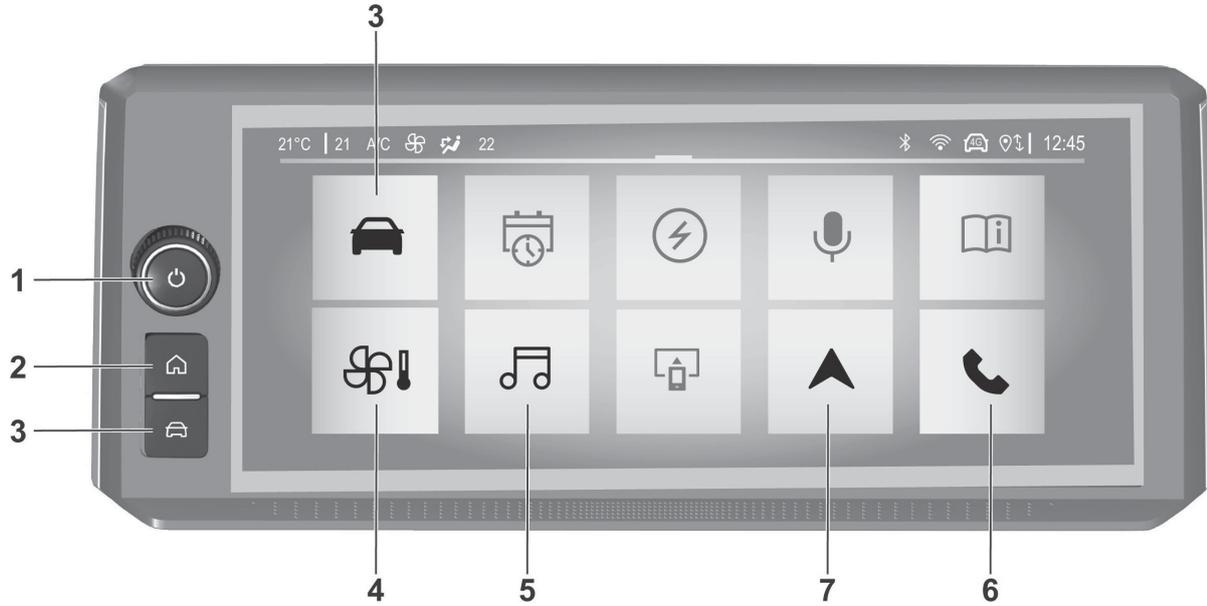
- Menu 116
- Profiles 119
 - Creating a profile..... 119
 - Deleting a profile..... 119
- Updating The System 119
- Customisation 119
 - Screen colour..... 120
 - Sound ambience..... 120
 - Pages..... 120
- Screen operation 120
 - Touch..... 120
 - Touch and hold..... 120
 - Three finger quick access..... 121
 - Swipe..... 121
 - Returning to the previous screen... 121
 - Returning to the home screen..... 121
- Radio 121
 - Top bar..... 121
 - Choosing The Media 121
 - Choosing The Radio Frequency 121
 - Selecting A Radio Station 121
 - Memorizing A Radio Station 122
 - Audio Settings 122
 - Activating Traffic
 - Announcements..... 122
 - Phone 122
 - External devices 124
 - Settings..... 124
- Multimedia system 125
 - General information..... 125
 - Steering Wheel Controls 125

- Applications..... 125
- Voice Commands 125
- Navigation 126
- Connectivity 126
- Screen Mirroring 127
- Phone 127
- Settings..... 127

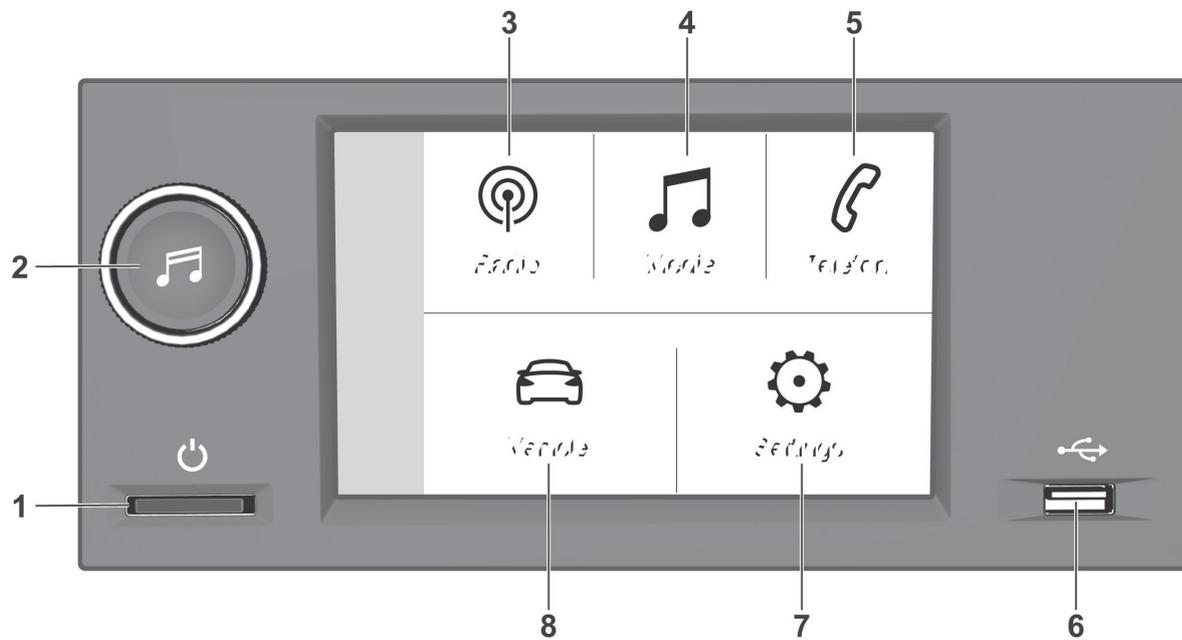
 **Warning**

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

Menu



-  Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound.
Long press: switch to standby mode.
Rotate: adjust the volume.
-  Displays the home screen.
-  Displays the menu for the driver assistant systems.
-  Displays the menu for the climate settings.
-  Displays the audio menu.
-  Displays the phone menu
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active.
-  Displays the navigation menu.



-  Long Press: switch power on / off.
Press: mute / unmute.
-  Turn: adjust volume / unmute.
-  Displays the radio menu.
-  Displays the media menu for external devices.
-  Displays the phone menu if a mobile phone is connected.
Displays a list of all paired devices if no phone is connected.
-  USB port for external devices.
-  Displays the system settings menu.
-  Displays the vehicle settings menu.

Profiles

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to several drivers. Different settings as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be

adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle.
To display the profile settings, open the settings app  and touch the profile menu.

Creating A Profile

To create a new profile, touch 
The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device

Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching .

Deleting A Profile

To delete a profile, touch  next to the corresponding profile and select . The guest profile cannot be deleted. The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

Updating The System

When an update is available and ready to install, a message will be displayed at the end of a trip after stopping the vehicle.

Alternatively, open the settings app  and touch the menu for updates to check if an update is available. If available, pending updates will be displayed on the screen.

It is possible to activate automatic downloads of updates by touching the checkbox. If activated, the updates will be automatically downloaded when the vehicle is connected to an external Wi-Fi network.

The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle will be left and closed. When the vehicle has started again, a message will be displayed on the screen if the installation of the update has been successfully finished.

When the installation has been failed, a corresponding message will be displayed on the screen. Contact an assistance centre.

Customisation

The Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be personalised.

To display the personalisation menu, open the settings application  and touch the menu for customization.

Screen Colour

The background colour of the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be chosen. The chosen background colour will immediately be shown in both the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display.

Sound Ambience

An active sport sound for the sport mode can be activated or deactivated.

Pages

Several personalised pages for the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be created.



Each page can be personalised by choosing the widgets to be displayed.

To add a page, touch .

To delete a page, drag and drop the respective page to .

Screen operation

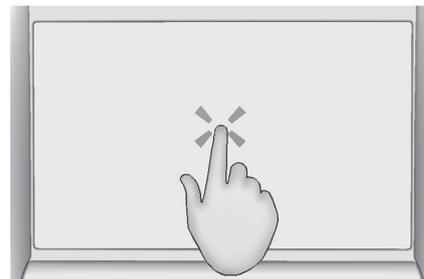
The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

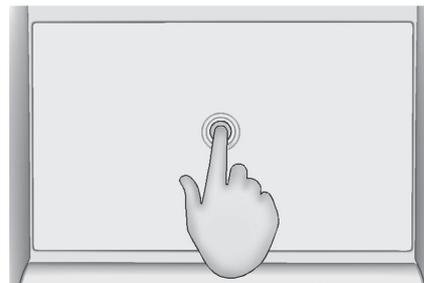
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



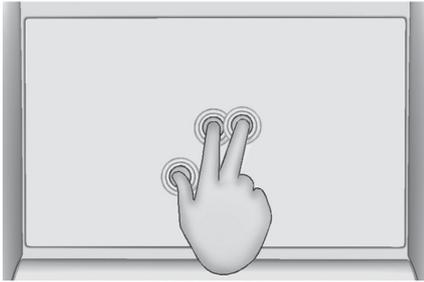
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Touch And Hold



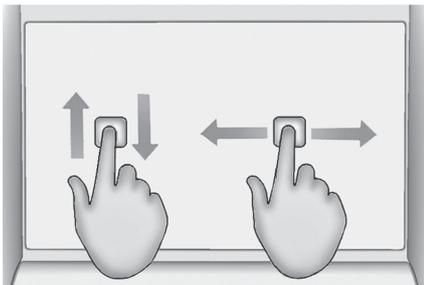
Touch and hold can be used to save radio stations.

Three Finger Quick Access



Touch is used to display the apps overview.

Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Returning To The Previous Screen

To return to the previous screen, touch ← in the upper left corner of the screen. When ← is touched on the home screen, the audio screen will be displayed.

Returning To The Home Screen

To return to the home screen, touch 🏠.

Radio

Top Bar

The top bar on the screen indicates the following information:

- time
- temperature

Choosing The Media

Display the audio screen by touching 🎵 in the apps overview.

Touch 📶 to switch between the radio and a connected external device as the audio source.



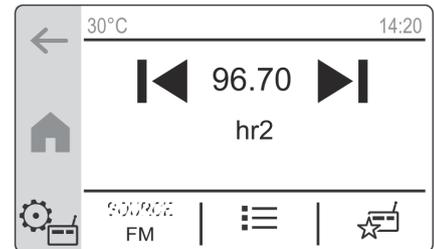
Choosing The Radio Frequency

To tune into a specific radio frequency, touch 🔍.

A number pad will be displayed. Enter the desired frequency and touch ✓ to confirm.

To select the waveband, touch 📶.

Selecting A Radio Station



-  : Touch to go to the previous station / song or touch and hold for rewinding.
- 96.70** : Touch to enter a frequency.
-  : Touch to go to the next station / song or touch and hold for fast forwarding.
-  : Adjust the audio settings.
- SOURCE** : Select the audio source.
-  : Display the station list / tracklist.
-  : Display the favourites list.

Sources

Touch **SOURCE** and select the desired audio source. The currently active audio source will be indicated. When an external device will be connected, the Infotainment system automatically selects the external device as the audio source. When the external device will be disconnected, the previous audio source will be selected.

Station tuning

To tune into a certain radio station, open the station list 

and touch **ABC**. All receivable radio stations are sorted by the first letter. To tune into a specific frequency, touch the frequency indication on the radio main screen. A new screen will be displayed with a number pad. A frequency can be entered.

Station list

To display the station list, touch . The currently active radio station will be indicated by . Favourite radio stations will be indicated by .

To update the station list, touch  and select **Update list**.

Memorizing A Radio Station

Up to 16 radio stations can be saved as favourites. Touch  to display the favourites list.

To save the currently active radio station as a favourite, touch and hold the desired row in the favourites list.

Audio Settings

To adjust the audio settings, touch  on the audio screen and select **Audio settings**. The following settings can be adjusted:

- Activate / deactivate speed compensated volume
- Activate / deactivate touch tones
- Adjust sound distribution
- Adjust ambience, bass and treble

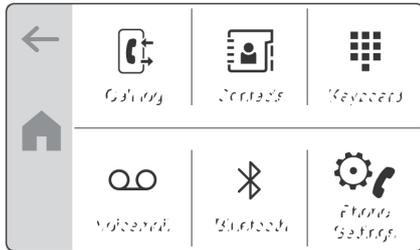
Activating Traffic Announcements

Traffic announcement is a service of FM radio stations. When traffic programme is activated, the currently playing audio source will be interrupted when an FM radio station is broadcasting traffic news. The audio source will be switched back when the traffic news are over. Traffic announcements can be activated or deactivated in the radio settings .

Phone

Not every mobile phone fully supports the phone function. Therefore, deviations from the range of functions described below are possible.

Phone main menu



-  : Display the call list.
-  : Display the contact list.
-  : Display the number pad.
-  : Call the answering machine if a voicemail number is set.
-  : Display a list of all paired devices.
-  : Adjust the phone settings.

Note

On some mobile phones, access permissions for contact and call lists may

have to be set when connecting the mobile phone to the Infotainment system.

Making a phone call

To make a phone call, either choose a contact from the contact list or dial a phone number via the number pad.

Phone settings

To go to the phone settings menu, go to the phone menu and select .

The following settings are adjustable:

- Putting phone calls automatically on hold.
- Setting a voicemail number.

Pairing a phone

To pair a mobile phone, proceed as follows:

1. Enable Bluetooth on the mobile phone and ensure it is visible for other devices.
2. On the Info Display, select **Telephone** → **Manage devices**.
3. Touch **Add**.
Mobile phones are being searched.
4. Select the desired mobile phone.
5. Select the Infotainment system from the Bluetooth device list on the mobile phone.

6. Compare and confirm the shown code on the mobile phone and on the Info Display. Touch **OK** on the Info Display.

Alternatively, a number pad might appear on the Info Display. Enter the code that is shown on the mobile phone.

Some mobile phones require access to certain phone features, follow the instructions.

7. Determine whether the mobile phone is to be connected for the phone function and music streaming.

Once the mobile phone is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.

If the mobile phone is connected for the phone function,  will be displayed in the list of paired devices.

If the mobile phone is connected for music streaming,  will be displayed in the list of paired devices.

Disconnecting and connecting a mobile phone

1. In the phone menu on the Info Display, select **Bluetooth**.
2. To disconnect the currently connected mobile phone, touch the

corresponding mobile phone and select **Yes**.

The mobile phone is disconnected.

- To connect another paired mobile phone, touch the corresponding mobile phone and select **Yes**.
The mobile phone is connected.

Deleting a paired mobile phone

- In the phone menu on the Info Display, select **Bluetooth** ➔ **Manage devices**.
- Touch **Delete**.
- Select the desired mobile phone.
- Touch **Yes**.
The mobile phone is deleted.

Speech recognition

The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on a smartphone. See the smartphone manufacturer's operating instructions to find out whether the smartphone supports this feature.

In order to use the voice pass-thru application, the smartphone must be connected via Bluetooth.

Activating speech recognition

Press and hold  on the steering wheel until a speech recognition session is started.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn  on the control panel or press the volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)  or downwards (decrease volume) .

Deactivating speech recognition

Press  on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session is ended.

External Devices

A USB port for the connection of external devices is located next to the Info Display.

When an external audio source (via USB or Bluetooth) is connected and selected as audio source, the following symbols will be displayed on the audio screen:



: Interrupt playback.



: Resume playback.



: Display the tracklist.



: Display the library (folders, artists, albums, playlists, songs).

In the library , the tracks can be sorted by artist, album etc.

When a folder is selected in the library , only the tracks of the corresponding folder are displayed in the tracklist . The following playback functions can be activated in the media settings :

- Repeat:** Repeat the tracks of the current list.
- Shuffle:** Play tracks in random order.

Settings

To display the system settings menu, go to the home screen and select . The following submenus are available:

- **Display:** Adjust the display brightness and the text scrolling or turn the screen off.
- **Date/Time:** Adjust the date and the time.
- **System:** Adjust the privacy settings for data sharing and vehicle position, reset the system to the factory settings, adjust the units and see the system information.
- **Languages:** Change the system language.

- **Bluetooth:** Display a list of all paired devices.
- **Audio:** Activate / deactivate speed compensated volume and touch tones and adjust sound distribution, ambience, bass and treble.

Multimedia system

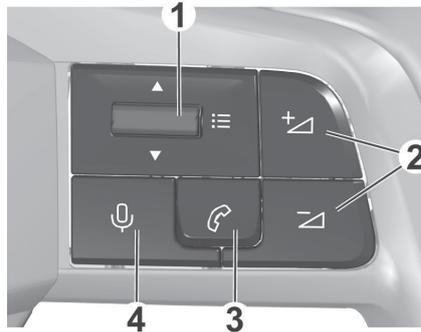
General Information

Status bar

The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status
- Bluetooth activation
- mobile reception
- activated functions, e.g. A/C

Steering Wheel Controls



- 1: Toggle up or down: select the previous / next radio station or track or browse through the list of recent calls.
Short press: display a menu or validate a selection.
- 2: Short press: adjust the volume or unmute the sound.
Long press on : mute the sound.
- 3: Short press: accept an incoming call, hang up, display the list of recent calls or display the phone projection screen.
Long press: refuse an incoming call.

- 4: Short press: activate the voice assistant of the Infotainment system.
Long press: activate the voice assistant of the connected mobile phone

Applications



To display a list of all available apps, touch .

Alternatively, the apps overview will be displayed by a 3-finger touch on the screen.

Voice Commands

Press and hold  on the steering wheel and say the corresponding activation voice command of the smartphone's voice assistant to use the voice assistant of the smartphone via the Infotainment system.

Speech recognition

The integrated speech recognition can be used to operate the Infotainment system via voice commands.

There are three ways to activate the speech recognition:

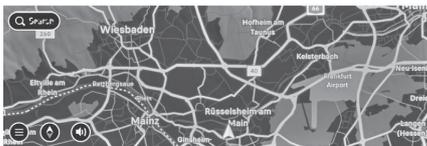
- press  on the steering wheel
- touch  in the Info Display
- say "Hey Opel"

After pressing  on the steering wheel or touching  in the Info Display, wait for the beep before saying a voice command.

To display some voice command examples, open the help menu  in the Info Display. The examples will be sorted by categories, e.g. radio or navigation.

Navigation

Touch  in the Info Display to open the navigation app.



Starting a route guidance

To start a route guidance, touch  to enter an address via a keyboard.

After typing the first letters of the address, matching addresses will be displayed.

Once the address is entered, several routes might be displayed on the map. Choose one before starting the route guidance.

Active route guidance

During an active route guidance, information about the route, e.g. the estimated arrival time and the distance, will be displayed on the screen.

To activate or deactivate voice prompts of the route guidance, touch .

To change the route, add a stop, e.g. a restaurant or a petrol station, or to show instructions, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen.

Route settings

To open the settings menu, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen and then touch the settings menu .

Touch  to view map downloads, to set the map colour, to set the points of interest shown on the map and other map settings, to set the arrival information, to set the side bar on the

route guidance screen, to set the map orientation or to show the vehicle range on the map.

Touch  to set the options for rerouting, to set the preferred route types (fast, short, eco-friendly) or to avoid specific routes (toll roads, unpaved roads, etc.).

Touch  to set the types of voice prompts, alerts and sounds.

Touch  to set the privacy information (keep journey history, frequent destinations, etc.).

Map updates

When connected services are activated, the map of the current region will be updated automatically.

When the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the maps of all other regions can be updated via the maps and display menu  within the settings menu .

Connectivity

To display the connectivity menu, open the settings app  and touch the menu for connectivity.

The following settings are adjustable:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth

or phone projection) and search for nearby devices

- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- privacy settings: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorised services

Bluetooth connection

Touch  in the Info Display to open the phone app.

Once a mobile phone is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth, the following functions are available via the phone app:

- display the contact list
- display a list of the recent calls
- dial a telephone number via a keyboard

Screen Mirroring

The phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from a smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls. Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with the

smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone

Connect the phone to the USB port or connect the phone via Bluetooth. Make sure phone projection is activated in the connectivity settings.

Starting phone projection

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto app on the Info Display.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

Phone

Pairing a mobile phone

To pair a mobile phone, open the settings menu in the phone app in the Info Display.

Open the Bluetooth menu on the mobile phone and activate the function.

Select the mobile phone from the list on the Info Display. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone.

Once the mobile phone is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.

Also a second mobile phone can be connected via the settings menu in the phone app.

Making a call

To make a call, choose one of the contacts from the contact list, dial a telephone number via the keyboard or select a number from the recent calls list.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a message on the Info Display.

To accept an incoming call or hang up an active call, touch the corresponding button on the Info Display or press  on the steering wheel.

To refuse an incoming call, touch the corresponding button on the Info Display or press and hold 6  on the steering wheel.

Settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app  and touch the menu for the system settings .



The following system settings can be adjusted:

- language
- date and time, time format, date format
- unit for distance and consumption
- unit for outside temperature
- restore the factory settings
- view system information

Audio settings

In the settings menu within the radio app, the following settings can be adjusted:

- sound settings: ambience sound, equaliser, balance
- radio settings: station list order, activation or deactivation of station follow-up and traffic and news announcements
- volume settings: system voice, ringtone, phone call, system sounds, navigation warnings

Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination and the interior lighting, open the settings app  and touch the menu for the brightness adjustment. The interior lighting can also be activated or deactivated.

Privacy

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app . Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching . The privacy settings can be set for each profile. The following privacy settings can be set:

- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.

When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

Connected services

To display the menu for connected services, open the settings app  and touch the corresponding menu entry.

Starting & Operating

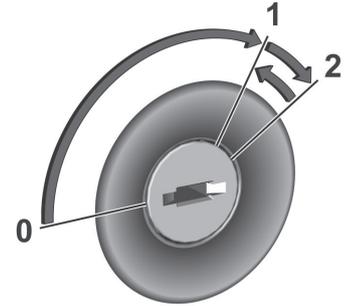
Starting procedure.....	129
Starting and stopping the engine ...	129
Stop & Start Automatic Function.....	131
Stop & start system	131
Brakes	132
Parking Brake	133
Regenerative braking	135
Transmission	135
Automatic transmission	135
Manual transmission	137
Drive Selector (Electric)	138
Drive modes	139
Driving Mode Selector	139
Traction modes	140
Engine exhaust	140
Exhaust filter	141
Catalytic converter	141
Fuel	141
Diesel Fuelling	141
Hydrogen Fuelling	142
Refuelling	142
Charging	145
Battery charging operation	145
Charging types	146
Charging cables	147
Charging	149
Programmable charging	151
Connection	151
Disconnection	153
FCEV.....	153
High-voltage system	153

Vehicle loading	154
Roof Bars	154
Load Reduction Mode	155
Trailer towing	156
Towing Device.....	156
Towing equipment	157
Trailer stability assist.....	160
Towing recommendation.....	160

Starting procedure

Starting And Stopping The Engine

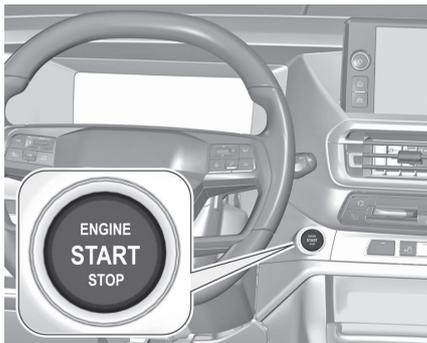
Vehicles with ignition switch



1. Turn key to position 1 to release the steering wheel lock.
2. Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
3. Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
Do not operate accelerator pedal.
Diesel engines: wait until control indicator  extinguishes.

4. Turn key briefly to position 2 and release after engine has been started. Manual transmission: during an Autostop (Stop & Start), the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.
Automatic transmission: during an Autostop (Stop & Start), the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

Vehicles with power button



- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
- Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.

- Press **Start/Stop** button.
- Release button after starting procedure begins. Diesel engine starts after control indicator  for preheating extinguishes.
- Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press **Start/Stop** once more briefly.

To start the engine during an Autostop:

- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

Fuel cell version

Note

The operating temperature of the vehicle is between -20 °C and +45 °C. Vehicle operation is restricted to this ambient temperature range.

Operate the vehicle at a temperature below -10 °C for at least 15 minutes before switching off the ignition.

Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press Start/Stop for five seconds.

Danger

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled.

Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

At temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Stop & Start Automatic Function

Stop & Start System

The stop & start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.

Activation

The stop & start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

The system can be activated in the vehicle personalisation. If the stop & start system is temporarily not available, the control indicator  flashes for a few seconds.

Deactivation

The stop & start system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

If the system is deactivated during an Autostop, the engine restarts immediately.

Autostop

Vehicles with manual transmission

An Autostop can be activated at a standstill or at a speed below 20 km/h. Activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the selector lever to neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal or gear selector in **N**, Autostop is activated automatically. In case of vehicles with automatic transmission of type B, an Autostop can also be activated at a speed below 20 km/h.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Indication



An Autostop is indicated by control indicator .

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The stop & start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The stop & start system is not manually deactivated.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The sliding doors are closed
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The ambient temperature is between 0 °C and 35 °C.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Note

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop.

Immediately after higher speed driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop & start system.

Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depress the clutch pedal without depressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

Type A: The engine is restarted if

- the gear selector is in position **D** with **M** activated or not and the brake pedal is released

- the gear selector is in position **N**, the brake pedal is released and the gear selector is moved to position **D** with **M** activated or not
- the gear selector is in position **P**, the brake pedal is depressed and the gear selector is moved to position **R**, **N** or **D** with **M** activated or not
- the reverse gear is engaged

Type B: The engine is restarted if

- the gear selector is in position **D** or **M** and the brake pedal is released
- the gear selector is in position **N**, the brake pedal is depressed and the gear selector is moved to **D** or **M**
- the reverse gear is engaged

Restart of the engine by the stop & start system

The selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop & start system:

- depending on engine, vehicle speed exceeding 3 km/h or 25 km/h (manual transmission)

- vehicle speed exceeding 3 km/h (automatic transmission)
- stop-start system manually deactivated
- driver's door opened
- sliding door opened
- driver's seat belt unfastened
- engine temperature too low
- charging level of vehicle battery below defined level
- brake vacuum not sufficient
- vehicle driven at least at walking speed
- climate control system requests engine start
- air conditioning manually switched on

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed

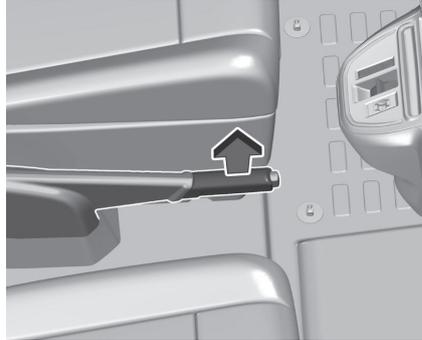
firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey. When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Parking Brake

Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure the parking brake is applied. Control indicator  illuminates constantly when parking brake is applied.

Manual parking brake



Warning

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope. To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever. To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Electric parking brake



Applying when vehicle is stationary

Warning

Pull switch  for a minimum of one second until control indicator  illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied. The electric parking brake operates automatically with adequate force. Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running, as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing

Switch on ignition. Keep brake pedal depressed and then push switch (P).

Drive away function

Vehicles with manual transmission:

Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated. It is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

Engaging **R**, **D** or **M** and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated. It is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

Electric vehicles: Selecting **R**, **D** or **B** and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated. It is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

Braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch (P) is kept pulled, the electric

parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle. As soon as the switch (P) is released, braking will be stopped.

The antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control stabilise the vehicle while the switch (P) is kept pulled. If an error of the electric parking brake occurs, a warning message is displayed in the driver information centre. If the antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control fail, one or both indicators (ABS) and (ESC) illuminate in the instrument cluster. In this case, stability can only be provided by repeatedly pulling and pushing the switch (P) until the vehicle is immobilised.

Automatic operation

Automatic operation includes automatic application and automatic release of the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake can also be applied or released manually by using the switch (P).

Automatic application:

- The electric parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off.
- (P) illuminates in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the application.

Automatic release:

- Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.
- (P) extinguishes in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the release.

If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and the brake is not released automatically, make sure the front doors are properly closed.

Deactivation of the automatic operation

In certain situations such as very cold weather or when being towed, it is necessary to deactivate the automatic operation of the electric parking brake.

1. Start the engine.
2. If the parking brake is released, apply the parking brake pulling the switch (P).
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Press the switch (P) for at least ten seconds and maximum 15 seconds.
5. Release the switch (P).
6. Depress the brake pedal and keep it depressed.
7. Pull the switch (P) for two seconds.

The deactivation of the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is confirmed by  illuminating in the Driver Information Centre. The electric parking brake can only be applied and released manually.

To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Apply the parking brake.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position P (automatic transmission type A) / N (automatic transmission type B). On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position P (automatic transmission type A) / N (automatic transmission type B). Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows.

- Switch off the engine.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

FCEV: when parking the vehicle for more than 10 hours under cold conditions and with low power level of the high-voltage battery, it is recommended to plug in the vehicle.

Functionality check

When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator  and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Control indicator  flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and try applying it again.

Regenerative Braking

Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high-voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the regenerative braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver must be prepared to use the brake pedal.

Warning

Depending on the engine braking force the brake lights are illuminated.

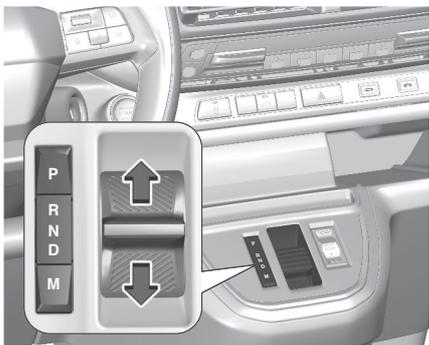
Regenerative braking generates electrical energy resulting from engine braking to charge the high-voltage battery.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).

Gear selector



E-Toggle



Move/Rotate the selector or press the respective buttons.

- P:** park mode
- R:** reverse mode
- N:** neutral mode
- D:** automatic mode
- M:** manual mode

After moving/rotating the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Moving/rotating the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time. When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

To engage **P**, press/select button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 2 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time

If the vehicle is moving too fast **P** is not engaged.

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution
Engaging R while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select R after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in **D** for enhanced riding and handling performance.

Manual mode M

In this mode, it is possible to change gears manually using the steering wheel paddles.

Manual mode **M** can only be selected if **D** is engaged.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

- Press button **M**.
- Pull steering wheel paddles to select gears manually.
- Pull right paddle **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Pull left paddle **-** to shift to a lower gear.
- Multiple pulls allow gears to be skipped.
- Press **M** again to return into **D**.

Gear shift indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons. Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Free wheeling

In certain situations, e.g., in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.

To prevent the vehicle shifting automatically from **N** into **P**, enable free wheeling: With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.

2. Within five seconds, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch off ignition (on vehicles equipped with power button: press and hold the power button) and move the selector forwards or backwards.
3. Release the brake pedal and switch on ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the switch .
5. Release the brake pedal and switch off ignition.

To revert to normal operation, depress the brake pedal, switch on the engine and select **P**.

To revert to normal operation on vehicles equipped with an electronic key, switch the ignition on and then switch the ignition off again, without depressing the brake pedal.

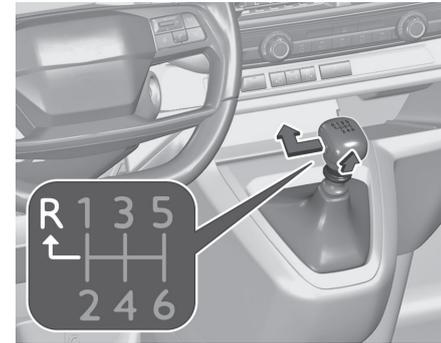
Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Electronic transmission control enables only third gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.

Do not drive faster than 100 km/h. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Manual Transmission



To engage reverse, depress the clutch pedal, pull the ring under the selector lever and move the selector lever quite to the left and front.

If the gear does not engage, set the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again. Then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced.

A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Drive Selector (Electric)

The vehicle uses an electric drive unit with a 1-gear transmission.

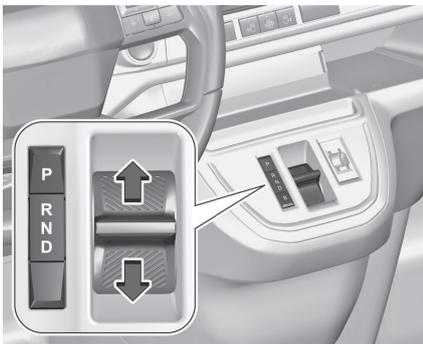
Caution

If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not respond when you try to go faster, do not continue your journey. The drive selector could be damaged. Consult a workshop as soon as possible.

Caution

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the drive selector. If you are stuck, do not spin the tyres. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

The selector is located on the centre console between the seats.



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.

- P:** park mode
- R:** reverse mode
- N:** neutral mode
- D:** automatic mode

After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 2 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

This mode is for normal driving.

Regenerative braking mode with one-pedal driving

In this mode, vehicle speed is significantly reduced by releasing the

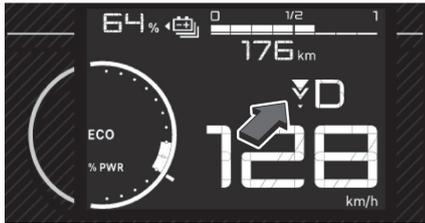
accelerator pedal, without operating the brake pedal.

Use the maximum braking force when driving down steep hills, in deep snow, in mud or in stop-and-go traffic.

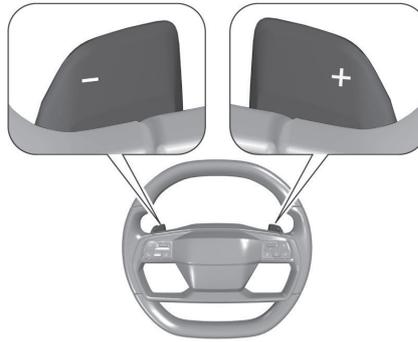
Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high-voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the regenerative braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver must be prepared to use the brake pedal.

BEV



Three braking levels are selectable. The respective braking level is indicated by one to three triangle segments in the Driver Information Centre.



Pull left paddle - to increase the braking force and pull right paddle + to decrease.

Drive modes

Driving Mode Selector

The following drive modes are selectable:

- Normal mode
- Power mode
- Eco mode

Each drive mode corresponds to a different vehicle setting.



To select the respective drive mode, use the shown toggle switch. Drive modes can also be selected on the menu page will open on the Info Display when the toggle switch has been operated.

Normal mode

The settings in this mode are set by default. Every time the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected. BEV: To optimise range, electric engine power output is reduced.

Power mode

Provides the same performance as Normal mode, however, when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Eco mode

Optimises energy consumption by reducing the performance of heating and air conditioning as well as reducing the performance of the electric engine.

BEV: To optimise range, electric engine power output and heating are reduced.

Fuel cell vehicle - limited power

If the charging level of the highvoltage battery falls below 35%, the system switches to limited power mode.

Acceleration and maximum speed are then limited.

Traction Modes

Caution

The vehicle is designed to drive principally on-road, but it also enables driving off-road occasionally. However, do not drive on terrain where the vehicle could be damaged due to obstacles, such as stones among others and on terrain with steep inclines and poor grip. Do not cross waters.

Caution

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can cause a collision or losing control.

Caution

When selecting a traction mode, ensure to select only the mode appropriate for the terrain you are driving on.

Traction modes designed to optimise traction in low-grip conditions (snow, mud and sand).

Traction modes allow to choose between three modes by the toggle switch:

- snow mode 
- mud mode 
- sand mode 

Snow mode

This mode optimises wheel spin to guarantee the best acceleration based on the available traction.

This mode is active up to a speed of 80 km/h.

Mud mode

This mode allows considerable wheel spin at start-up for the wheel with

the least grip, this removes mud and reestablishes traction.

Simultaneously, the wheel with the most grip is provided with the most torque possible.

When advancing, the system optimises and allows the usage of a higher wheel spin to enable more propulsion.

This mode is active up to a speed of 60 km/h.

Sand mode

At start-up, this mode allows a small amount of simultaneous wheel spin on the two drive wheels, enabling the vehicle to advance and reduce the risk of sinking.

When advancing, the system allows the usage of a higher wheel spin to enable more propulsion.

This mode is active up to a speed of 60 km/h.

Engine exhaust



Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.
Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.
Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust Filter

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.

The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of  or , accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre and a chime.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h until the control indicator extinguishes.

Note

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapour can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Cleaning process not possible

If  or  stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.
Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter.
Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for

a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Fuel

Diesel Fuelling

The Diesel engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester)

B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester)

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets

standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20

B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible.

However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Caution

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Note

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Low temperature operation

At temperatures below 0 °C, some diesel products with biodiesel blends may clog, freeze or gel, which may affect the fuel supply system. Starting and engine operation may not work properly. Make

sure to fill winter grade diesel fuel at ambient temperatures below 0 °C. Arctic grade diesel fuel can be used at extremely low temperatures below -20 °C. Using this fuel grade in warm or hot climates is not recommended and may cause engine stalling, poor starting or damage on the fuel injection system.

Hydrogen Fuelling



Only use hydrogen fuel that complies with European standards DIN EN 17124 or ISO 14687 or equivalent

FUEL TYPE : CHG
MFP : 87.5 MPa (12690 psi)
NWP : 70 MPa (10150 psi)



A label at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed hydrogen fuel type, as well as the maximum fuelling pressure

(MFP) and the nominal working pressure (NWP).

In Europe, the pump nozzles of filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Note

In the event that the charging level of the high-voltage battery and the hydrogen level are very low, recharge the high-voltage battery first, before refuelling with hydrogen

Expiry date of hydrogen tanks

 **Danger**

Never refuel the hydrogen tanks after the indicated expiry date.

Refuelling

 **Danger**

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

 **Danger**

Fuel is flammable and explosive.

No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.
If a smell of fuel can be noticed inside the vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe, the pump nozzles of filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Caution

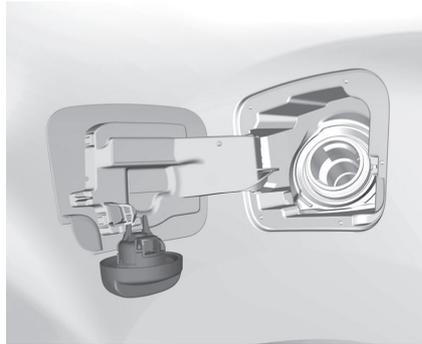
In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of vehicle.



If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the version, release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap or pulling at the right bottom corner. Depending on the version, place the key in the lock and unlock the cap.

- To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be attached to the hook on the fuel filler flap.

- Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.
- To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

- To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.
- Close the flap and allow it to engage.

Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps. Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

FCEV vehicle

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.
Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Never refuel the vehicle after an accident. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

⚠ Warning

Only use fuelling stations which comply with the fuelling standard SAE J2601 or EN 17127.

Note

The system does not allow the simultaneous refuelling and charging of the vehicle.

Note

If the refuelling of the vehicle is not possible, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Note

Once refuelling has been enabled by the system, the refuelling of the vehicle must be started within five minutes.

If this time has been expired, the refuelling process is cancelled. In this case, close the fuel filler flap and start refuelling process again.

Note

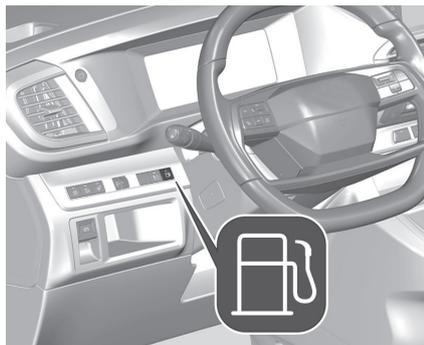
Do not start refuelling if the fuel filler flap has not been locked completely. Open

and re-lock the fuel filler flap then restart the refuelling procedure.

Before refuelling

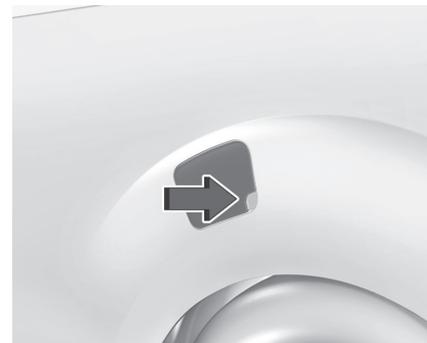
In order to start the refuelling, following preconditions must be fulfilled:

- The ignition is switched off.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is in position **P**.

Refuelling

1. Press and hold . The system performs a check of the preconditions. This may take up to one minute. If the preconditions have been fulfilled, the fuel filler flap is then unlocked, a message is

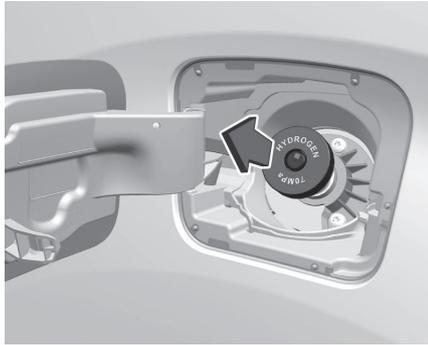
displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds.



2. Open the fuel filler flap by pulling on the right bottom corner. The fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of the vehicle.

Note

If the fuel filler flap has been closed again by mistake, it has to be reopened within one minute, otherwise the refuelling process needs to be started again.



3. Remove the fuel filler cap and re-fuel the vehicle by following the instructions given by the filling station.
4. After refuelling, reinsert the fuel filler cap, close the fuel filler flap and allow it to engage.

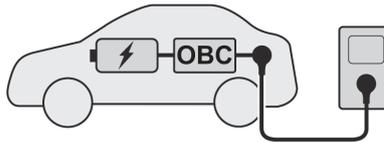
Charging

Battery Charging Operation

General information

⚠ Warning

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.



- high voltage battery of the vehicle
- internal onboard charger (OBC)
- charging cable
- external charging device

The charging cable connects the vehicle with an external charging device providing electric power. This may be a domestic electrical outlet, a Green'Up socket, a wall box or a public charging station.

The high voltage battery is charged with direct current (DC) only. When charging the vehicle with alternating current (AC), AC must be converted into DC. This is done by the vehicle's onboard charger. The onboard charger is available with 7.4 kW (single-phase) and 11 kW (3-phase). If the vehicle is charged at a public DC charging station, no DC conversion is required. The high voltage battery can be directly charged with DC provided by the DC charging station.

The speed of charging the vehicle's high-voltage battery depends upon the weakest element of the charging chain. To achieve the maximum charging speed, charging cable and charging device must be attuned to each other.

Note

Make sure that the charging cable used fits to the vehicle's onboard charger.

Electric power consumption and range

The electric power consumption and the range of the vehicle were not available at time of printing.

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of electric power consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No.

2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

Charging Types

There are different types of charging the vehicle's high-voltage battery.

Charging at wallboxes



A wallbox is a charging unit for private households. It provides a charging cable that must be connected to the vehicle's charging port. Some wallboxes do not provide a charging cable. In this case, a separate charging cable is required which must be connected to both the wallbox and the charging port of the vehicle.

Charging time may take approx. 5 to 7 hours with a charging power of 11 kW or

7.5 to 9 hours with a charging power of 7.4 kW.

Charging at charging stations

Charging stations may provide alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC). Charging time may vary depending on the charging station, DC charging stations provide the fastest charging. The charging cable of the charging station has to be connected to the charging port of the vehicle.



- AC charging station: Charging time may take approx. 5 to 7 hours with a charging power of 11 kW or 7.5 to 9 hours with a charging power of 7.4 kW.



- DC charging station: Up to approx. 80% of battery capacity may be charged in approx. 30 minutes at a charging power of 100 kW.

Charging at domestic electrical outlets



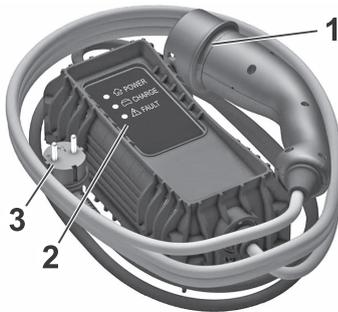
To charge at a domestic electrical outlet, connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the domestic electrical outlet. Charging time may take approx. 30 to 38 hours with a charging power of 1.8 kW.

Charging Cables

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When travelling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

Basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2)



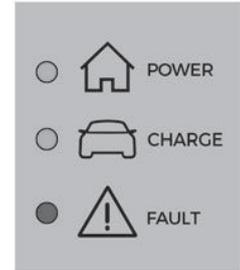
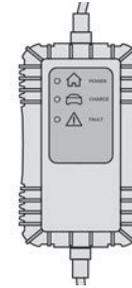
- 1: Vehicle plug
- 2: Status indicators
- 3: Wall plug

Basic domestic cables (mode 2) are used for charging at domestic electrical outlets. A basic domestic cable (mode 2) consists of a vehicle plug, a control box and a plug for the domestic electrical outlet. The control box has an integrated charge controller and several LEDs indicating the charging status.

Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are similar to basic domestic cables (mode 2). However, the charging performance of enhanced domestic cables (mode 2 charging) is better than the charging performance of basic domestic cables (mode 2).

Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are used for Green'Up sockets, which must be installed by a certified electrician at the customer's site.

Charging cable status indicators



After plugging in the charging cable, it will perform a quick self-test and all status indicators illuminate for a moment. For the functions of the status indicators, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Important information about portable BEV charging

- Charging a BEV can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug into any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 A continuous load.
- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over

time, making them unsuitable for BEV charging.

- Check the electrical outlet / plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet / plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weatherproof while in use.
- Mount the charging cable to reduce strain on the electrical outlet / plug.

Mode 3 charging cable



- 1: Vehicle plug
2: Plug for wall box / AC charging station

Mode 3 charging cables are used for charging at wall boxes and AC charging stations. A mode 3 charging cable provides a vehicle plug and a plug for the wall box / AC charging station. Wall boxes / AC charging stations may provide an integrated mode 3 charging cable. For more information on the mode 3 charging cable, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Mode 4 charging cable

Note

Only use DC charging cables shorter than 30 metres.

Mode 4 charging cables are used for DC charging. Since mode 4 charging cables are integrated within DC charging stations, they only provide a vehicle plug.

Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



Charging connector, vehicle side (mode 2 or mode 3)



Charging socket, charger side (mode 3)



Charging connector, vehicle side (mode 4)

Warning

Avoid any entry of fluids into the charging port of the vehicle, the vehicle plug of the charging cable and the domestic electrical outlet.

When charging at a public AC charging station / public DC charging station, follow the instructions for the use of the respective charging station. Public AC charging stations may not provide an integrated charging cable. In this case, a portable mode 3 charging cable is required.

Warning

When charging at a domestic electrical outlet, only use an outlet that is properly earthed and protected by a 30 mA differential switch.

Only use a domestic electrical outlet protected by a circuit breaker adapted to the amperage of the electrical circuit.

Have a qualified electrician check the electrical installation to be used. The installation must be in compliance with national standards and compatible with the vehicle.

When using a dedicated domestic electrical outlet, have it installed by a qualified electrician.

Make sure that the electrical outlet, the plug and the cable do not support the weight of the control box.

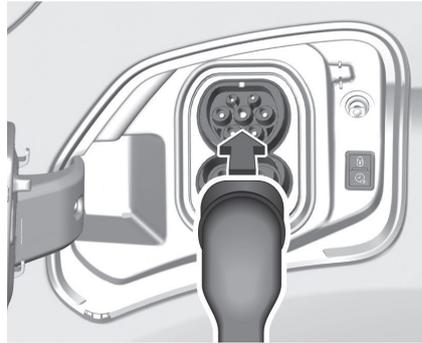
Charging

1. Shift into **P** and switch off the vehicle.

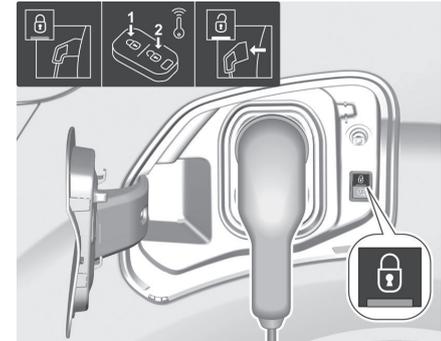
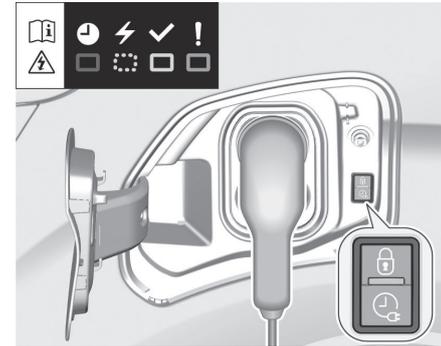


2. Push the charging port flap to release it.

3. If necessary, take the charging cable out of the load compartment.
4. If necessary, plug in the plug of the charging cable into the corresponding port of the external power source.



5. Plug in the vehicle plug of the charging cable into the charging port of the vehicle.



Once charging, the vehicle plug will be locked to the charging port and cannot be disconnected while charging is active.  indicator illuminates.



The start of charging is indicated by the green flashing of the status indicator at the charging port and at the control box of the charging cable if available.

State of charging indicator light	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Flashing white	Charging initialisation.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging complete.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

⚠ Warning

In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it. Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cancelling the charging process

Note

At public charging stations, the cancelling and subsequent resuming of the charging process may cause additional costs.

Once the charging process has started, the doors can only be unlocked without cancelling the charging process by previously activating selective unlocking.

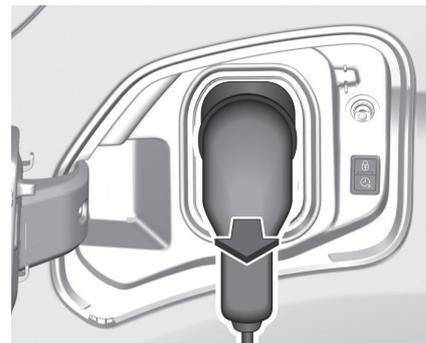
Press  on the remote control to cancel the charging process at any time.

Press  twice to cancel the charging process at any time if selective locking is activated.

Stop charging

The high-voltage battery is fully charged if the status indicator on the charging port permanently illuminates green.

1. Unlock the vehicle before removing the vehicle plug from the charging port. If the vehicle is already unlocked, lock the vehicle and unlock it again.



2. Disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging cable from the charging port within 30 seconds after unlocking.
3. Close the charging port flap by pressing firmly in the centre to latch properly.
4. Disconnect the charging cable from the external power source.

- If necessary, store the charging cable in the load compartment.

While the charging cable is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

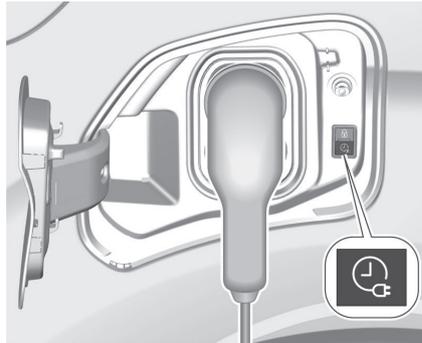
Programmable Charging

By default, charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected to the charging port of the vehicle.

Programmable charging is only possible when charging at a domestic electrical outlet / Green'Up socket or a wall box. Depending on the infotainment system, there are two different ways to use programmable charging via the Info Display

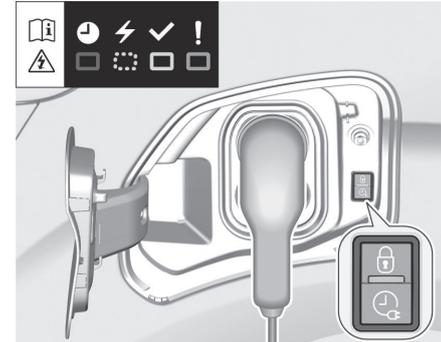


- Press .
- Touch .
- Select **Charging**.
- Touch .
- Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts.
- Touch **OK**.
- Plug in the vehicle.



- Within one minute, press  to activate programmable charging.

- Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

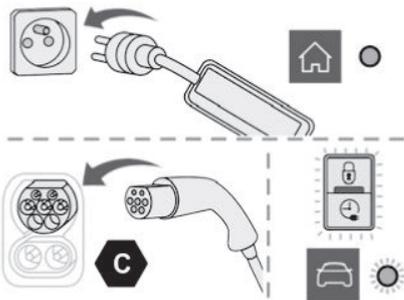


The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Connection

- Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode P, otherwise charging is not possible.
- Open the charging flap by pressing the pushbutton, and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Domestic charging, mode 2



- Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket. When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.
- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.

- Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lamps in the flap, then those on the control unit.

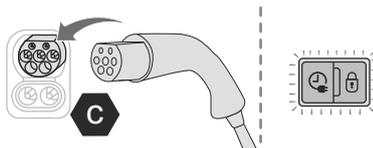
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.

The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Note

When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging, mode 3



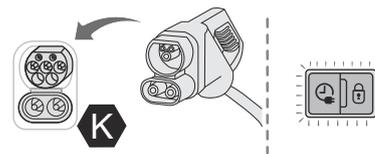
- Follow the instructions for use of the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).
- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator lamp in the flap flashes green.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.

The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging, mode 4



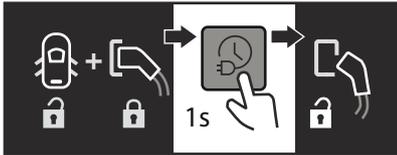
- Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
- Follow the instructions for use and connect the fast public charger cable to the vehicle connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator lamp in the flap.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.

The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- If the vehicle is unlocked, lock it and then unlock it.
- If the vehicle is locked, unlock it. The red indicator lamp in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.
- In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within 30 seconds. The charging indicator lamp comes on in white.

Note

With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

Note

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator lamp in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

FCEV

Under cold ambient conditions, the fuel cell system may continue to run for up to 15 minutes after the ignition has been switched off. During this time, noise will emit and water vapour may escape from the exhaust system. The charging process will only start and the programmable charging is only possible after the fuel cell system is completely shut off.

⚠ Warning

In the event of a problem

All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

High-Voltage System

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



⚠ Warning

An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition. Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

High voltage battery

⚠ Warning

Damage to the high-voltage battery or high-voltage system can create a risk of electric shock, overheating or fire. If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by a moderate to severe crash, it must be inspected as soon as possible by qualified personnel.

Until the technical inspection has been carried out, the vehicle must be stored outside at a minimum distance of 5 metres from any structure or other flammable objects.

If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by flood or fire, it must not be moved at all and must be inspected by qualified personnel as soon as possible.

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- BEV: do not completely discharge the high-voltage battery.
- FCEV: do not completely discharge the high-voltage battery. At a very low charge level of the high-voltage battery the propulsion system will be deactivated. The vehicle cannot be driven until the high-voltage battery is recharged to 50%.
- BEV: do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high-voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.

- FCEV: when parking the vehicle for a longer period (more than twelve hours), it is recommended to have a high-voltage battery charge level of at least 50%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at low temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above 30 °C.
- Do not use the high-voltage battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the high-voltage battery.

Leakage

Damage to the high-voltage battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The following is recommended:

- In the event of an incident, always inform the fire and emergency services that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the high-voltage battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the high-voltage battery, which are toxic.

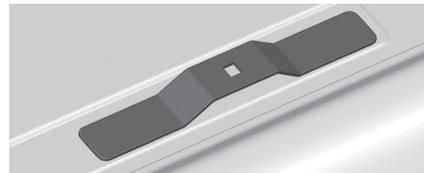
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.
- Too low a coolant level must be topped up and the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Vehicle loading

Roof Bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop. Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

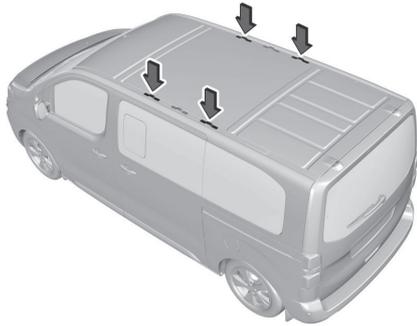
Mounting



Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

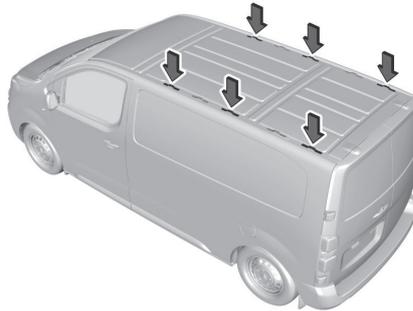
The number and location of the mounting points may vary depending on the vehicle:

Vehicles with glass panel

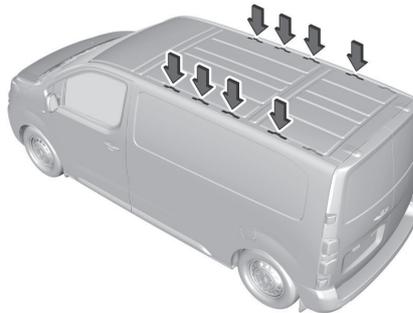


Mount two roof bars using the mounting points marked in the picture.
Permissible roof load L1, L2, L3 max. 100 kg.

Vehicles without glass panel



Mount three roof bars using the mounting points marked in the picture.
Permissible roof load L1, L2, L3 max. 150 kg.

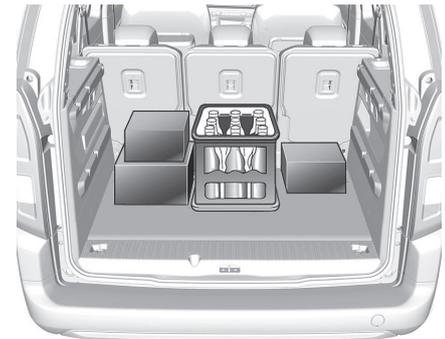


Mount the roof rack using the mounting points marked in the picture.
Permissible roof load L1 max. 140 kg.
Permissible roof load L2, L3 max. 170 kg.

Load Reduction Mode

Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are securely engaged. If

objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the rear luggage cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate) and the kerb weight.
To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual. The kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity.
Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.
Do not drive faster than 120 km/h.

Trailer towing

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for the vehicle.
Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

Towing Device

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values that must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 metres of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate.
When distributing the loads in the trailer, heavy objects should be placed as close as possible to the axle.

Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.
The maximum permissible vertical coupling load is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.
Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of

heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

Towing Equipment

Depending on version the vehicle can be fitted with a detachable or a fixed coupling ball bar.

Type A

Caution

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

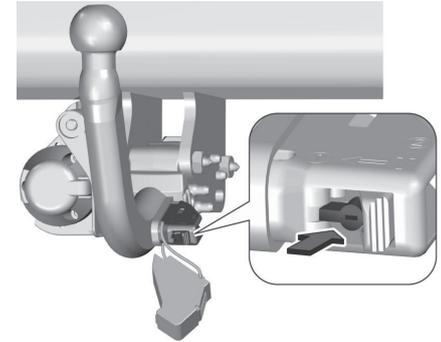
Fitting the coupling ball bar



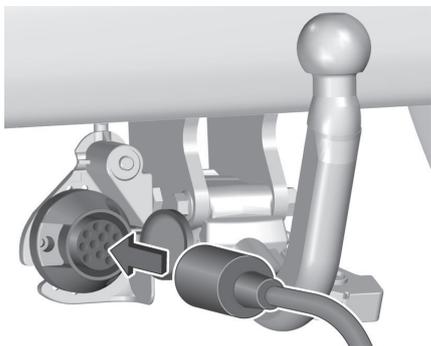
1. Swivel the connecting socket downwards. Take off the cap.



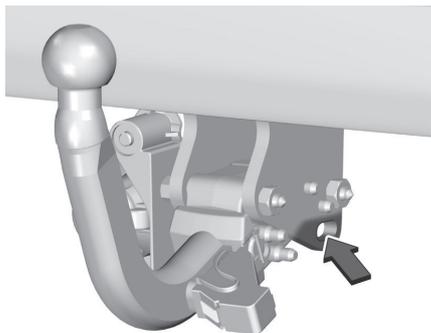
2. Insert the coupling ball bar into the opening and push firmly up to the stop.



3. Insert the plug lock in the opening and lock it with the corresponding key.
4. Put on the cap.
5. Attach the trailer.



6. Connect the trailer plug to the socket.



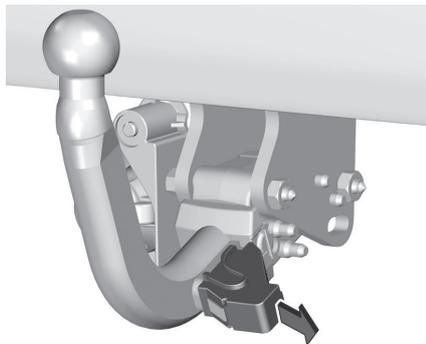
7. Attach the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.

Warning

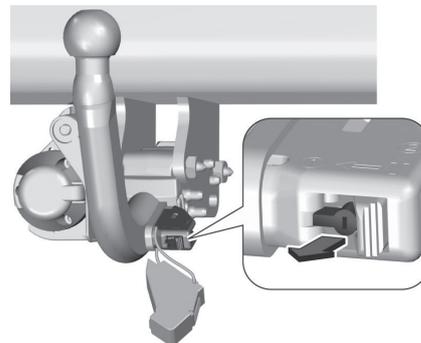
Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Dismounting coupling ball bar

1. Disconnect the trailer plug.
2. Unfasten the breakaway stopping cable.
3. Remove the trailer.



4. Take off the cap.



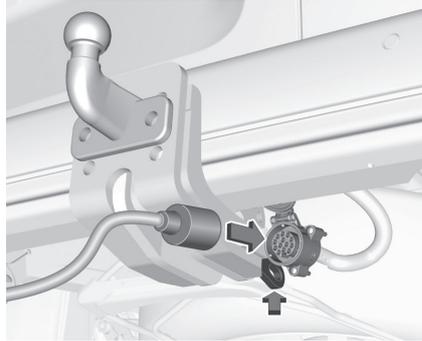
5. Insert the key in the plug lock, unlock it and remove it from the opening.



6. Move 1 to left and hold it pressed, push 2 to the back and remove the coupling ball.
7. Swivel the connecting socket upwards. Put on the cap.

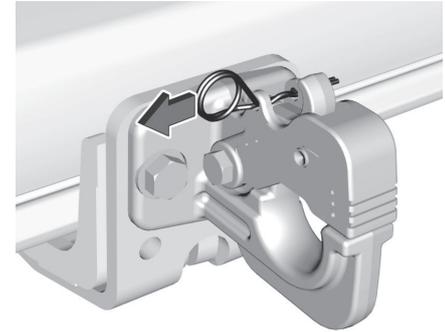
Type B

1. Swivel the connecting socket downwards.
2. Attach the trailer.

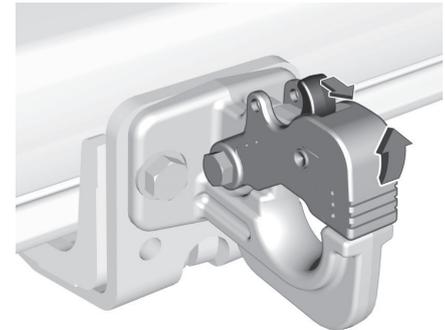


3. Connect the trailer plug to the socket and fasten the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.

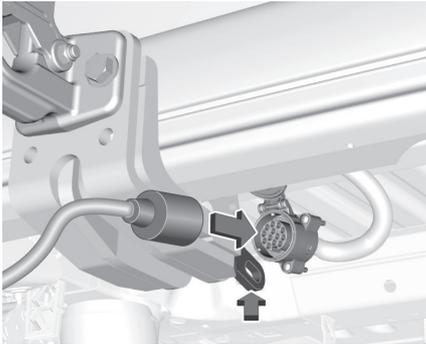
Type C



1. Remove the safety splint.



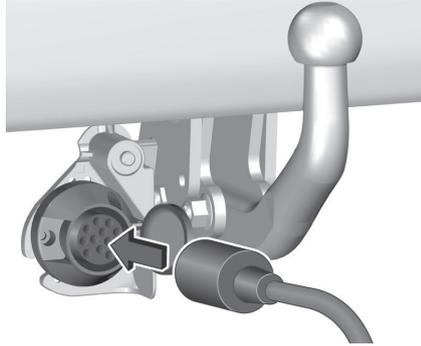
2. Pull the lever and open the towing ring.
3. Swivel the connecting socket downwards.
4. Attach the trailer, close the towing ring and fix the splint.



5. Connect the trailer plug to the socket and attach the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.

Type D

1. Swivel the connecting socket downwards.
2. Attach the trailer.



3. Connect the trailer plug to the socket and fasten the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.

Trailer Stability Assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle / trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible. Trailer stability assist is a function of the Electronic Stability Control.

Towing Recommendation

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving. Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently. When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)

Introduction To Assistance Systems.....	161
General information.....	161
Speed control assistance system.....	162
Speed limiter	162
Cruise control	163
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	165
Collision avoidance assistance system.....	170
Active Emergency Braking (AEB)	170
Brake Assist (BA)	173
Vehicle Stability Assistance System.....	173
Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)	173
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TC)	174
Braking Performance Assistance System.....	174
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD)	175
Anti-lock Brake Warning	175
Visibility Enhancement Assistance System.....	175
Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)	175
Passenger Side Camera	177

Lane Centering Assistance System.....	178
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	178
Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	180
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System.....	182
Automatic Park Assist	182
Surround Vision	184
Rear Vision Camera (RVC)	187
Driver's Attention Assistance System.....	188
Activation or Deactivation.....	188
Driving time alert.....	188
Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD)	189
Driver Drowsiness Detection with Front View Camera.....	189
Driver Drowsiness Detection with Driver Monitoring Camera.....	189
System limitations.....	190
Fault.....	190
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System.....	190
Hill Descent Control (HDC)	190
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	191
Utility Assistance Features.....	192
Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)	192
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	194

Introduction To Assistance Systems

General Information

Warning

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention. The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle. When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

Note

To comply with the European general safety regulations, some driver assistance systems can only be deactivated on the Info Display until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

BEV

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention.

Speed control assistance system

Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 30 km/h.

The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

Switching on the system



Press .

Depending on version, either the speed limiter screen or only  is displayed.

 is grey indicating that the system is still not active.

Activation of the functionality

Press **OK** or  to activate the speed limiter.  is illuminated in green or white.

Setting speed by the driver



The preset speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to  to increase or  to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the speed limiter.

Depending on version, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated to detect speed limit signs.

When passing the speed limit sign

With activated speed limiter, **OK?** is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

With activated speed limiter, press **OK** on the steering wheel.

OK? is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly to the final point. In this case, the preset speed value flashes.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

When exceeding the preset speed is not caused by depressing the accelerator pedal, e.g., when driving down a steep slope, an audible signal is given.

Warning

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the preset speed. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press , speed limiter is in pause mode.  is illuminated in grey. The vehicle is driven without speed limiter. Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Resume limit speed

Press  or **OK**, the stored speed limit will be obtained.

Switching off the system

Press , the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limiter screen is hidden from the Driver Information Centre or  extinguishes.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have the system checked by a workshop.

Cruise Control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 40 km/h.

For vehicles with manual transmission, any gear has to be selected. For vehicles with automatic transmission, position **D** or the second or a higher gear in position **M** must be selected.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal. The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.

The status and preset speed is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Switching on the system



Press .

Depending on version, either the cruise control screen or only  is displayed.  is grey indicating that the system is still not active.

Activation of the functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed as speed setting and activate the cruise control.  changes from grey to green or white indicating that system is active. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Alternatively, move the thumb wheel to  to increase or  to decrease the speed and store this speed as speed

setting. Cruise control is immediately activated if the thumbwheel is moved upwards or downwards. \curvearrowright changes from grey to green or white.

Setting speed by the driver



If the system is active, the preset speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to \curvearrowright to increase or \curvearrowleft to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the cruise control. Depending on version, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated to detect speed limit sign.

When passing the speed limit sign

With activated cruise control, **OK?** is automatically displayed. Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

With activated cruise control, press **OK** on the steering wheel.

OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed.

While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed setting flashes.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press \mathbb{I} . Cruise control is in pause mode. \curvearrowright is illuminated grey. The vehicle is driven without cruise control. Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

The cruise control may be deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- clutch pedal depressed for more than five seconds
- electric parking brake engaged

Resume stored speed

Press \mathbb{I} or **OK**, the stored speed will be set.

Switching off the system

Press \curvearrowright , the cruise control mode is deselected and the cruise control screen is hidden from the Driver Information Centre or \curvearrowright .

System limitations

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic.
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.

- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using snow chains, nonslip covers or studded tires.

When driving down a steep hill, the system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary.

When driving up a steep hill or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

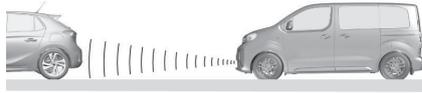
In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have the system checked by a workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control is an enhancement of the cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a

certain following distance to the vehicle ahead.



It uses a radar unit located in the front bumper to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control. The adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle ahead, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

If the vehicle ahead accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control progressively accelerates the vehicle to return to the stored set speed. If the driver operates the turn lights to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily

approach the vehicle ahead to help passing it.

However, the set speed will never be exceeded.

If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

On vehicles with manual transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until 30 km/h. On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until a full stop. Depending on the version, the system can automatically accelerate the vehicle after a full stop.

⚠ Warning

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down.

If the brake lights fail, the system does not operate.

Switching on the system



Press  successively until the adaptive cruise control mode is selected. The adaptive cruise control screen is displayed. The system is still not activated.

Activation conditions

The system can be activated if the following conditions are met:

- vehicle speed between 30 km/h and 180 km/h for vehicles with manual transmission, between 0 km/h and 180 km/h for vehicles with automatic transmission
- driver's door closed
- driver's seat belt fastened

- **D** selected or second or higher gear engaged
- parking brake released
- brake pedal depressed if vehicle stationary

Activation of the functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed and activate the cruise control. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and a road element are displayed in green. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Alternatively, move the thumb wheel to  to increase or  to decrease the speed and store this speed. The cruise control is immediately activated if the thumbwheel is moved upwards or downwards. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and the road element are displayed in green.

Setting speed by the driver



The set speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to  to increase or  to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new value for the adaptive cruise control.

When passing the speed limit sign

With activated adaptive cruise control, **OK?** is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

With activated adaptive cruise control, press **OK** on the steering wheel.

OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed. If a slower moving vehicle is ahead, the following distance selected by the driver is restored.

While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed flashes on the adaptive cruise control screen.

 **Warning**

Acceleration by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre.

Resuming stored speed

Press **||▶** or **OK** to reactivate the adaptive cruise control at the stored speed.

Adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the adaptive cruise control allows to maintain the selected distance behind a braking vehicle until a complete stop is reached.

If the system has stopped your vehicle behind another vehicle, the green control indicator  is displayed next to the set speed setting. This symbol notifies that the vehicle is held automatically in the stop position.

While the vehicle is held in the stop position, the following recommendations should be followed:

- Do not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the load compartment.
- Do not engage the reverse gear.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.

Within three seconds after the vehicle has been stopped by the system, the vehicle slowly moves off again. After three seconds, accelerate or press **||▶** to drive away. Pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle when driving away.

If the vehicle stays stopped for more than five minutes without any action by the driver, the electric parking brake

is applied. Control indicator  will illuminate. To release electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal.

 **Warning**

When the system is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Be always prepared to manually apply the brake to hold the vehicle stationary. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by adaptive cruise control. Always engage **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Setting the following distance

When the adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to close (1 bar), normal (2 bars) or far (3 bars).

If the engine is running and the adaptive cruise control is switched on (grey)

or active (green), you can modify the following distance setting:



Press the button to display the current following distance setting in the Driver Information Centre.

Press the button successively to select the required following distance setting. The selected following distance is indicated by full bars on the adaptive cruise control screen.

Warning

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the vehicle ahead

If the system detects a vehicle in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control screen changes accordingly.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press , adaptive cruise control is in pause mode. The preset speed is illuminated grey.

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated, but not disabled. The last stored set speed remains in memory for later usage.

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- speed falls below 30 km/h for a vehicle with manual transmission
- risk of engine stalling in case of a vehicle with manual transmission
- clutch pedal depressed for more than ten seconds
- electric parking brake engaged
- seat belt unfastened
- driver's door opened

Switching off the system

Press  successively to switch adaptive cruise control off.

System limits

Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

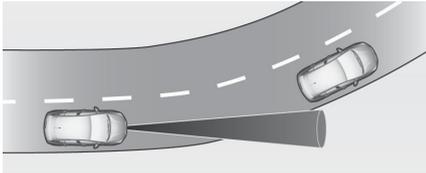
- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- The adaptive cruise control only considers traffic driving in the same direction.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians, cyclists or animals for braking and driving off.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider stationary vehicles.

As the radar's field of detection is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:

- vehicles of reduced width, e.g. motorcycles, scooters

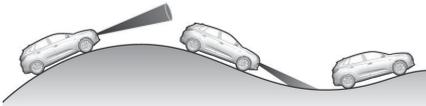
- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane
- vehicles entering a corner
- vehicles suddenly pulling out or in
- vehicles ahead braking excessively

Deactivate the system in the following situations:



- when driving through a tight bend
- when approaching a roundabout
- when following a vehicle not detected by system, e.g., a motorcycle
- when the vehicle ahead sharply decelerates
- when a vehicle cuts in sharply

Hill considerations



⚠ Warning

Do not use the adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed. Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

Radar unit



The radar unit is located in the middle of the front bumper.

⚠ Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a front-end impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind may be affected and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

⚠ Warning

The usage of a licence plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a license plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

Fault

In the event of an adaptive cruise control fault, a warning light is illuminated in the Driver Information Centre and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre accompanied by an audible signal.

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not

comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

Have the system checked by a workshop.

As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lights are faulty.

Do not use the system if the front bumper is damaged.

Collision avoidance assistance system

Active Emergency Braking (AEB)

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and pedestrians directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. For vehicles equipped with camera and radar, active emergency braking also detects cyclists. Before active emergency braking is applied, the driver may be warned by the forward collision alert.

Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns

the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

The system may also react on animals. However, animals smaller than 0.5 m or objects on the road may not be detected.

After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Activating / deactivating the system

Active emergency braking is activated / deactivated on the Info Display.

Depending on version, deactivation is only possible at a standstill.

If deactivated,  illuminates and a message is shown in the Driver Information Centre.

Depending on version, the system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Functionality

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges.

Active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a pedestrian has been detected.

On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a stationary vehicle or a cyclist has been detected.

On vehicles equipped only with front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 5 km/h to 85 km/h when a moving vehicle has been detected.

On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 5 km/h to 140 km/h when a moving vehicle has been detected.

The system includes:

- forward collision alert
- smart brake assist
- automatic braking

Forward collision alert

The forward collision alert warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the vehicle ahead, with a cyclist or a pedestrian.

Alerting the driver

The driver is warned by following alerts:

- Level 1: A warning message is displayed in the Driver Information

Centre, when the distance to the vehicle ahead gets too small.

- Level 2: A warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds, when a collision is imminent and immediate driver's action is required.
- Level 3: Depending on version, the vehicle may produce a short brake jerk to confirm the risk of collision. The immediate driver's action is required.

Warning

When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, a level 2 alert may be displayed without a level 1 alert before. Level 1 alerts depend on the alert sensitivity set. This alert type is only displayed in case of moving vehicles. At lower speed it is disabled.

Selecting the alert sensitivity Note

If the alert sensitivity setting with the longest distance is set, the system warns earlier. This increases the safety, but increases the amount of alerts if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the number of alerts, select a shorter alert sensitivity setting.

Three alert sensitivities can be selected in the driver assistance systems menu. The chosen setting will be memorised when the ignition has been switched off. The alert sensitivity will vary based on selected alert setting.

Smart brake assist

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking. This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Smart brake assist will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released.

Automatic braking

Just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

If active emergency braking is applied, (Ⓢ) flashes in the Driver Information Centre. If active emergency braking is finished, (Ⓢ) flashes for a few seconds. During this time, active emergency braking cannot be applied if there is a risk of a further collision.

Depending on version, below a speed of 30 km/h or 50 km/h, automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds this limit,

automatic braking reduces the speed. However, the driver must apply the brake to come to a complete stop.

- Automatic transmission: If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for a certain time. Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.
- Manual transmission: If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall. Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Cruise control will be deactivated when an emergency automatic braking occurs. In some cases, the driver may wish to override the automatic braking provided by the active emergency braking system. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal or firmly turn the steering wheel to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

Warning

Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Active emergency braking will not brake automatically outside of its operating speed range.

Operation conditions

Active emergency braking only works when:

- the brake system is operational
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are activated
- the seat belts of the front seats and depending on version of the rear seats are fastened
- constant speed on unwinding roads

Active emergency braking is automatically deactivated in the following cases:

- A spare wheel with smaller diameter is detected.
- A fault with the brake pedal switch or with the left or right brake light is detected.
- A fault in the active emergency braking system, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected.
- A severe crash, e.g., with airbag deployment was detected.

System limitations

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- front camera out of its regular position
- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- system initialisation process after battery disconnection
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens

- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog or snow

- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a workshop.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control in progress
- vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- vehicle overloaded

The driver must not overload neither the load compartment nor the roof of the vehicle.

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors must be cleaned.

If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.

We recommend deactivating the system in the vehicle personalisation in the following cases:

- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed
- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains
- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windscreen has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged or deformed

- if the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working

Fault

If the system has been deactivated, (ⓘ) illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

If the system has a fault, (ⓘ) illuminates in the Driver Information Centre, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.

If no message is displayed, stop the vehicle and check whether sensors or front camera are covered.

If the system does not work properly or is not available, e.g. during initialisation, (ⓘ) illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

(ⓘ) may also illuminate if the infotainment system has an issue.

If (ⓘ) and (🔧) illuminate in the Driver Information Centre after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, consult a workshop.

Brake Assist (BA)

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Vehicle Stability Assistance System

Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.

If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing  on the instrument panel)

Deactivation/Reactivation

Deactivation of the ASR system is indicated by this indicator lamp  on the instrument panel coming on and the display of a message.

The ASR system is automatically reactivated every time the ignition is switched off or at speeds over 50 km/h. Reactivation is manual below 50 km/h.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp  lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) And Traction Control System (TC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It limits the spinning of the driven wheels.

The TC is a component of the ESC. Traction Control improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by reducing the slippage of the driven wheels.

When slippage of at least one wheel is exceeding a certain threshold, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.



ESC and TC are operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator  extinguishes.

When ESC and TC operate,  flashes. After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Deactivation

TC can be deactivated via the Info Display at speeds below 50 km/h.

 illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

TC can be reactivated via the Info Display. TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system, the control indicator  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Braking Performance Assistance System

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.

ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

- When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.

Note

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at a moderate speed.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the STOP and ABS warning

lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light

☹ illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If ☹ does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

If ☹ illuminates together with ☹, a fault with the electronic brake force distribution has been detected.

Stop engine immediately and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Visibility Enhancement Assistance System

Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)

The side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot

zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses some of the parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.

The system does not detect:

- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

Activation

The system can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.

Functionality



When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, an LED will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror.

The LED comes on immediately when being passed.

The LED comes on after a delay when passing another vehicle slowly.

Operation conditions

The following conditions must be fulfilled for proper operation:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes
- the speed of your vehicle is between 12 km/h and 140 km/h

- passing a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 10 km/h
- another vehicle is passing with a speed difference of less than 25 km/h
- the traffic flow is normal
- driving on a straight or slightly curved road
- the vehicle is not pulling a trailer
- the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow
- the warning zones in the exterior mirrors or the detection zones on front and rear bumper are not covered

No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects, e.g. parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs
- in very dense traffic, when moving vehicles might be confused with a stationary object
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner
- when passing or being passed by a very long vehicle, e.g. lorry, coach,

which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision

- when passing too quickly

Deactivation

The system can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display. The state of the system is memorised when switching off the ignition.

The system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

Due to adverse weather conditions, such as heavy rain, false detections may occur.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates in the instrument panel, accompanied a display message. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

System limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- heavy or unequally distributed loading

- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- wrong tyre pressure
- roads with poor lane markings

when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur. The system may not keep the vehicle

in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected. The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure. The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc.). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving. Using the system on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off

Passenger Side Camera

The passenger side camera monitors the side of the vehicle.



The camera is mounted at the bottom of the exterior mirror on the passenger side. The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Camera with view to the rear

The camera shows the blind spot area of the passenger side.

Switching on



The camera is switched on when the vehicle is running and the passenger side view is selected from the rear view display or by pressing the button on the lever.

Switching off

The camera is deactivated when another view type is selected.

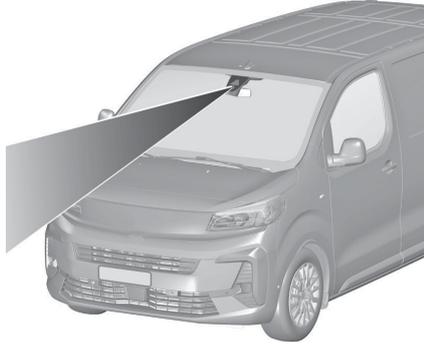
System limitations

The passenger side camera may not operate properly when:

- the surrounding is dark
- the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth
- there are extreme temperature changes
- the passenger door is open

Lane Centering Assistance System

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)



Lane keep assist supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned so that the vehicle turns back into the lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel. Turn steering wheel in same direction, if the system does not steer sufficiently. Turn steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if lane change is intended.

When the system steers to correct the trajectory of the vehicle,  flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre. Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than ten seconds. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time. When hands-off driving is detected during a correction a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a warning chime. Every further hands-off detection prolongs the warning chime duration.

A lane departure warning in the Driver Information Centre alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver's action is required.

Note

The system might be inactive if it detects lanes that are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

For correct operation of the system, the following preconditions must be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- the electronic stability control is activated and not in operation
- no plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- no temporary spare wheel is used
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present that prevents corrections

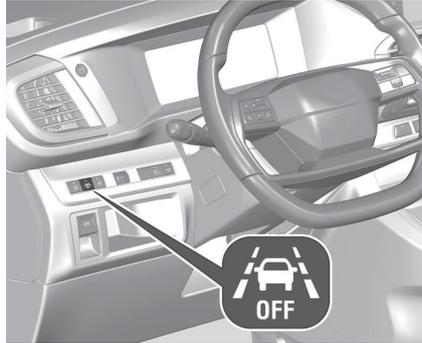
Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g. a trailer is attached.

Unavailability After Battery Disconnection

Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power

supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

Activation



If the system is activated, the LED in the button  is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press .

The system may also be activated in the Info Display via the vehicle settings .

Depending on version, the system is always ON, even if it was deactivated during the last driving cycle.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalization through the vehicle settings .

Due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle

personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated.

The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Note

Depending on version, the system is automatically reactivated at the next engine start.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, either press  until the LED in the button is illuminated or deactivate the system in the Info

Display via the vehicle settings . LKA shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  and  appear in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

If a sensor is covered,  illuminates in the Driver Information Centre and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

If the audible warning system does not work properly or is not available,  illuminates on the cluster and a message is displayed. Consult a workshop.

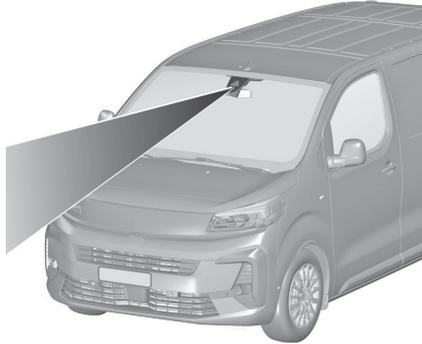
System limitations

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

The system performance may be affected by:

- camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- heavy or unequally distributed loading
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- wrong tyre pressure
- roads with poor lane markings

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.

When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator  rapidly flashes yellow.

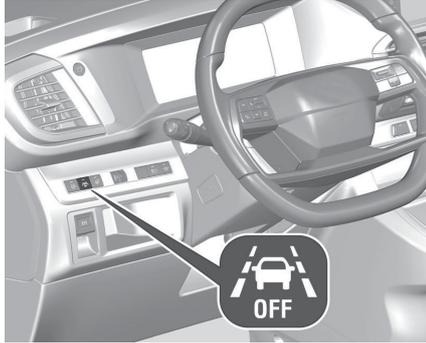
Warning

This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

For correct operation of the system, the following preconditions must be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present that prevents corrections

Activation



If the system is activated, the LED in the button  is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press . The system may also be activated in the Info Display via the vehicle settings . Depending on version, the system is always ON, even if it was deactivated during the last driving cycle. The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalization through the vehicle settings . Due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated.

The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Note

Depending on version, the system is automatically reactivated at the next engine start.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, either press  until the LED in the button is illuminated or deactivate the system in the Info Display via the vehicle settings . LDW shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  and  appear in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

If a sensor is covered,  illuminates in the Driver Information Centre and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

If the audible warning system does not work properly or is not available,  illuminates on the cluster and a message is displayed. Consult a workshop.

System limitations

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

The system performance may be affected by:

- camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- roads with poor lane markings

Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

Automatic Park Assist

Fuel cell version

If a coupling ball bar is attached to the vehicle, the detection zone of the parking sensors is disturbed and they do not operate properly.

Deactivate the parking assist everytime a coupling ball bar is attached to the vehicle.

General information

The rear system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.
Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

Rear parking assist

The system warns the driver with audible signals and a display indication against potentially hazardous obstacles behind

the vehicle while the reverse gear is engaged.

The system operates with ultrasonic parking assist sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged

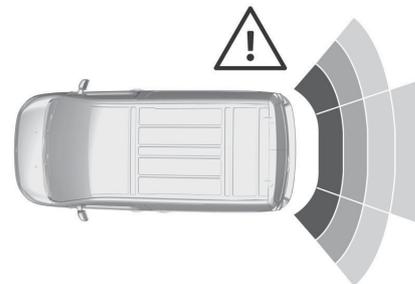
Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol ^PΔ may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous. If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in **P** position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

Note

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the

rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display. When the obstacle is very close, Δ for danger is displayed.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the ^PΔ flashes.

When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h, the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

Front-rear parking assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication. It uses two different audible signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.

The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

When a forward gear has been engaged, the front parking assist is activated, as soon as an obstacle is detected in the front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h.

When the reverse gear has been engaged, the rear parking assist and the front parking assist are activated.

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

The system is switched off automatically when reverse gear is disengaged or when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h.

Indication

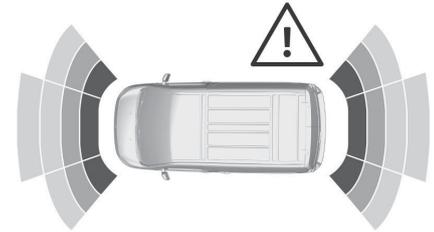
As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol ^{P)}Δ may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle.

If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in P position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

Note

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display. When the obstacle is very close, Δ for danger is displayed.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the ^{P)}Δ flashes.

When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h, the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

System limitations

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because

of high external noise level or other interference factors,  illuminates in the Driver Information Centre. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds. In the case of a permanent fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles. Special attention must be paid to low obstacles, which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution

In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated. In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged. In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given. Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors must be cleaned.

Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all if  illuminates or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle.

During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball bar. The driver must consider this additional length.

Note

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the licence plate is bent or a licence plate support is used.

Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Surround Vision

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info display, like a bird's eye view.

Warning

The surround vision system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view area, e.g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.

Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the surround vision system. Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen. Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

The system may use:

- rear camera, installed in the tailgate
- ultrasonic parking assist sensors in the rear bumper

Visualisation on the Info Display



The screen is divided into four areas, from left to right:

- selectable views: standard and 180° view
- view visualisation
- top view
- settings , muting v and unmuting the audible signal

The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Activation

The panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging the reverse gear when the engine is switched on
- manual activation in the Info Display when the vehicle speed is below 16 km/h

Functionality

Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre by selecting a view.

- standard view
- 180° view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected. Standard view is enabled by default. This setting can be changed in the settings of the panoramic view system in the Info Display.

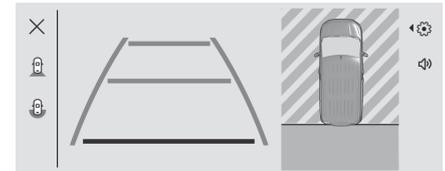
Depending on version, auto mode is activated by default. In this mode, the system selects the best view, standard or zoom, to display according to the information from the parking sensors. The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Standard view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the position of the steering wheel.

This view is available in auto mode or in the view selection menu.

Guidelines



The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the

edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.

This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. This view is available from the view selection menu only.

Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the vehicle in its near surroundings. Thus, the vehicle can be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is displayed automatically as soon as the vehicle approaches an obstacle during a manoeuvre.

Deactivation

Panoramic view system is deactivated when:

- a certain forward speed is exceeded or, depending on version, if reverse gear is not engaged for seven seconds.
- by pressing the icon ☒ in the left upper corner of the touch screen.

System limitations

Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of all cameras always clean. For the rear view camera, there is a washer nozzle which will be activated when the rear window washer is operating. If manually cleaning the lenses of the cameras, rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth.

Do not clean the lenses with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The surround vision system may not operate properly when:

- the surrounding is dark
- the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses
- during nighttime driving
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt
- the vehicle is towing an electrically connected trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- the vehicle had an accident. Contact a workshop.
- there are extreme temperature changes
- the passenger door is open

Caution

It is very important that any repair to the surround vision system is performed accurately according to Manufacturer specifications. Otherwise, the system may not work properly and there is a

risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from the system.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

Depending on version, camera is mounted above the license plate in the tailgate or on the upper part of the left rear door.

Warning

The rear vision camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed. Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear vision camera. Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Camera at top of the left rear door



The view of the camera is displayed in the rear view display.

Switching on



The rear vision camera is switched on when the vehicle is running and the

rear view is selected from the rear view display or by pressing the button on the lever.

When operating with a trailer, the rear view is still available.

Switching off

The rear vision camera is switched off when the rear view display is switched off.

Camera above the license plate on the tailgate



The camera is mounted in the rear bumper above the number plate.

Activation

Rear view camera is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that

appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guidelines

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

Depending on version, the outer guidelines can also be static and the gap between both lines represent the vehicle width including the exterior mirrors. The inner curved guidelines represent the maximum steering angle in either direction.

Deactivation

The camera in the rear bumper is deactivated when:

- a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- a forward speed of 10 km/h is exceeded.
- by pressing the icon  in the left upper corner of the touch screen.

System limitations

The rear vision camera may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark

- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense using the washer nozzle as described.
- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

Driver's Attention Assistance System

The Driver's Attention Assistance System monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings.

The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Taking a break is recommended as soon as feeling tired or at least every two hours. Do not drive when feeling tired.

Activation Or Deactivation

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle. The system can be activated or deactivated on the Information Display via the vehicle settings .

When the system is deactivated  may illuminate on the cluster.

Driving Time Alert

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol  on the cluster simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 65 km/h. The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.

The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened.

If the vehicle speed drops below 65 km/h, the system is paused. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 65 km/h.

Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD)

Depending on version the system uses different cameras to monitor the driver's level of vigilance:

- a front view camera outside the vehicle at the top of the windscreen
- a driver monitoring camera inside the vehicle on the driver side next to the windscreen facing the driver

Warning

To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

Driver Drowsiness Detection With Front View Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 65 km/h. The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analysed and no alert is given. The camera detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered. In certain driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message,  illuminates and an audible signal is given. After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and .

Driver Drowsiness Detection With Driver Monitoring Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 20 km/h. The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver.

The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking

- microsleeep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given. Additionally  illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. microsleeep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by  and a more pronounced audible signal.

Drowsiness and microsleeep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Reinitialisation

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialised in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 65 km/h for a few minutes

- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

System Limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlamps of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not

operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%

Fault

If the system has a fault,  illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned.

If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the driver's face was not detected by the driver monitoring camera due to e.g. sunglasses.

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

The descent control system allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal.

The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain at that speed when the system is activated. Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be apparent when the system is active

Caution

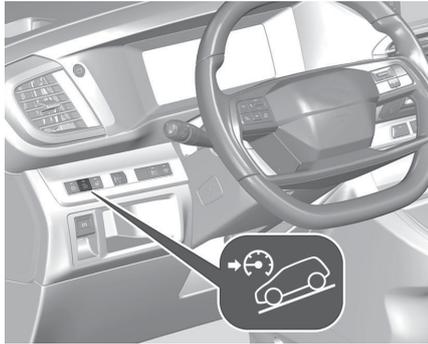
Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the descent control system, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

Activation

Note

The system activates in the case of slopes with a decline greater than five percent. The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.

Otherwise, select a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine from stalling. For vehicles with automatic transmission or BEVs, the system can be used with the selector lever in position **N**, **D** or **R**.



At speeds below approx. 50 km/h, press . The system can also be activated when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running.

The control indicator  in the instrument cluster is illuminated in green to show the system is activated.

When the vehicle starts its descent, the system controls the speed of the vehicle; accelerator and brake pedals can be released.

- If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes rapidly.
- If the gearbox is in neutral or the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes slowly.

If the system is operating, the brake lights automatically come on.

If the speed exceeds 30 km/h, regulation is paused. The  indicator light in the instrument cluster changes to grey. However, the LED of the  button is still illuminated.

Regulation is automatically resumed if the speed falls below 30 km/h, the slope is greater than 5% and the pedal release conditions are met.

Deactivation

Press  again until the LED in the button extinguishes. The green control indicator in the instrument cluster extinguishes, too.

If the speed exceeds 70 km/h, the system is automatically deactivated. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault

If the green control indicator  does not illuminate or flash after pressing the button, there is a fault in the system. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

Warning

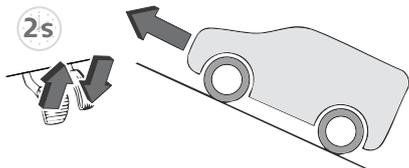
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator and the **P** indicator in the electric parking brake control illuminate steadily.

Warning

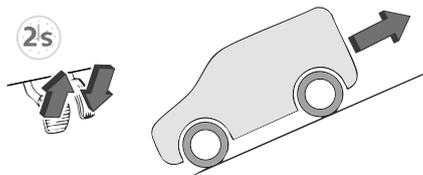
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:

- If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
- If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
- If mode **D** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the

vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Fault

If the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps  illuminate steadily on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Utility Assistance Features

Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)

Warning

The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

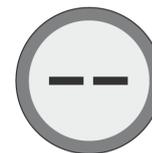
Depending on version, are two different systems available.

Speed limit system 1

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system provides speed limits and end of speed limits in the Driver Information Centre.

This system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h, the speed limit displayed flashes about ten seconds.

Updating navigation map data

To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. A navigation map update is available twice per year.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

Speed limit system 2 (compliant with the European General Safety Regulation)

This system displays permanently speed limit information in the Driver Information Centre independent of vehicle speed.

Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:

- camera at the top of the windscreen
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service

If travelling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:



If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:



If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given. The confirmation chime can be activated / deactivated on the Info Display.

If driving at a speed of at least 20 km/h and exceeding the speed limit, the speed limit displayed in the Driver Information Centre flashes after some time and an audible signal is given after some time. Time of occurrence varies. Both flashing and audible signal are terminated after a few seconds. Due to legal requirements, the audible signal can only be deactivated until the next time the ignition is switched on. The deactivation can be done via the Info Display or via shortcut 3x  if configured in the vehicle settings. If the audible signal is deactivated,  illuminates for a few seconds.

In case of a failure,  illuminates permanently. Consult a workshop.

Operation conditions

To provide country-specific speed limit information, the vehicle needs to identify the country it is currently in. If a corresponding country list is available in the Info Display, the respective country has to be selected manually. Otherwise, the country is automatically selected.

To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.

Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.

Note

It is possible to report a permanent speed limit misinformation on our website.

Updating data

To maintain the performance of the system, the vehicle software and the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals.

A navigation map update is available at least once per year. Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

For vehicle software update consult a workshop.

Other traffic signs

The system detects traffic signs and displays them in specific page of the Driver Information Centre.



This system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

System limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving with snow chains.
- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The vehicle ahead is creating road spray.
- Dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Speed limitation is painted on the surface of the road.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged or have been removed.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- Depending on version, the navigation map data may be outdated.

Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system. Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions. The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation. When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure. The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed. It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request.

It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

Warning

The tire under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding.
- lengthens braking distances.
- causes premature wear of the tires.
- increases energy consumption.

Warning

Checking tire pressures

This check should be done monthly when the tires are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 10 km at moderate speeds).

Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Note

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.

For more information on the Identification markings, refer to the corresponding section.

Note

Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Note

Spare wheel

The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp (⚠), accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

1. Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
2. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

3. Using a compressor, such as the one in the tire repair kit, check and adjust the pressures of all four tires when cold.
4. If it is not possible to do this check, drive carefully at reduced speed.
5. In the event of a puncture, use the tire repair kit or the light (depending on equipment).

⚠ Warning

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tire.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

⚠ Warning

Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tire blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 40 km/h, or when adopting a dynamic driving style.

Note

The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

⚠ Warning

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tires are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tire pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tires before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialized via the Display in the driver assistance systems menu (ⓘ).

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps (⚠) (🔧) illuminate steadily on the instrument panel.
In this case, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System function is no longer performed.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of emergency

Hazard Warning Lights	197
Activating Hazard Warning Lights.....	197
Automatic Hazard Warning Lights.....	197
Assist and SOS	198
SOS Call Feature	198
Emergency Call (eCall)	198
Automatic emergency call	198
Making Emergency Call	198
Assistance Call	198
Warning triangle	199
Warning Triangle Kit.....	199
Assembling The Triangle.....	199
Placing The Triangle.....	199
Jacking the vehicle and wheel changing.....	199
Wheel Changing Toolkit	199
Vehicles with spare wheel.....	200
Vehicles without spare wheel.....	200
Fuel cell version.....	200
Wheel removal/installation	201
Tire Repair Kit	202
Tire Repair Procedure	202
Jump starting	205
Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery	205
12V Battery Charger	207
Disconnecting / Connecting Battery	208
Quick-Release Battery Clamp.....	208

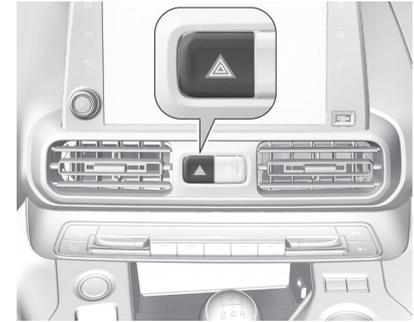
After Being Recharged - Restarted.....	209
Towing The Vehicle	209
Towing another vehicle.....	210

Hazard Warning Lights

Activating Hazard Warning Lights

Pressing this red button  causes all the direction indicators to flash. They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic Hazard Warning Lights



When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.

They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Assist and SOS

Note

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS or GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

SOS Call Feature



- 1 eCall (SOS)
- 2 ASSISTANCE

Privacy mode can be configured in the Settings menu on the touch screen.

Emergency Call (ECall)

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP).

A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

Note

The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

Manual Emergency Call

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button (1) in the overhead console for more than two seconds.

The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.

Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call. The LED switches off.

Automatic Emergency Call

Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Making Emergency Call

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP).

A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button in the overhead console for more than two seconds.

The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.

Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call. The LED switches off.

Automatic crash notification In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Assistance Call

If the vehicle breaks down, press button (2) for more than 2 seconds to request assistance. A voice message will confirm that a connection is being established.

Note

Language depends on the geographic coverage of the eCall And Assistance

Call systems and the system language of the vehicle.

Note

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and dealer. It can be configured in the Settings touch screen menu or application, depending on the audio equipment.

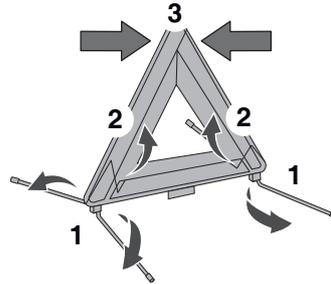
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "ASSISTANCE" button to confirm.

Warning triangle

Warning Triangle Kit

This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

Assembling The Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.

For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

Placing The Triangle

Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the vehicle and wheel changing

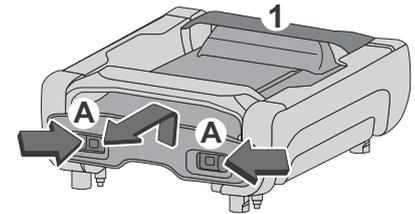
Wheel Changing Toolkit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle

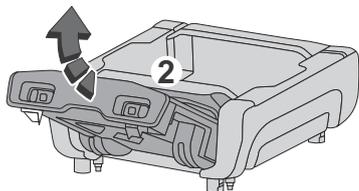
Note

The tool box is specific to the vehicle and may vary depending on version. Do not use it for any other purposes. The tool box is located under the left-hand front seat.

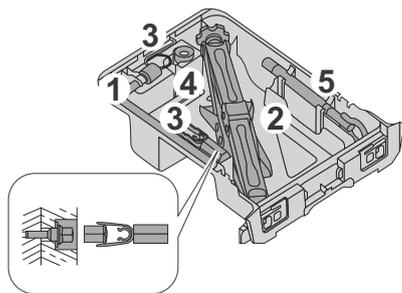
Access the tools (ICE or BEV)



1. Press latches A and slide them inwards to release the box.
2. To take it past bar 1, raise the box slightly then pull it as far as it will go.
3. Then, lift the box upwards to take it past bar 2.



Vehicles With Spare Wheel



The box contains:

1. Wheel wrench
For removing the wheel bolts and raising/ lowering the jack.

2. Jack
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tool
Depending on the vehicle's equipment, this removes the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
4. Socket for the "security" wheel bolts
For adapting the wheel brace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Towing eye

Note

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tire. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.

If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a Dealership or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the Manufacturer.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/ EC.

The jack does not require any maintenance.

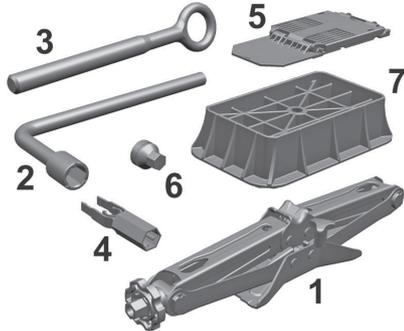
Vehicles Without Spare Wheel



1. 12 V compressor
2. Sealant bottle
3. Towing eye

Fuel Cell Version

The tools are located in the load compartment.



1. Jack
To raise the vehicle.
2. Wheel wrench
To remove the bolts.
3. Towing eye
See the Owner's Manual for further information.
4. Wheel bolt cover remover/hub cap remover
To remove the wheel bolt head covers on alloy wheels or the hub cap on steel wheels.
5. Chock
To immobilise the vehicle.
6. Adapter for the locking wheel nuts

To adapt the wheel wrench to the special security bolts, located in the glovebox.

7. Jack base
To use on soft grounds.

Spare wheel

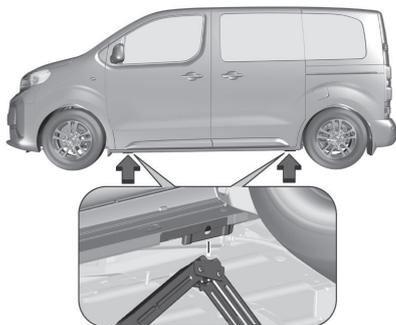
The spare wheel is located in a holder beneath the vehicle floor.

Wheel Removal/Installation

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
 - No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
1. Steel wheel rims with cover: Pull off the wheel cover with the designated tool.
Alloy wheel rims: Disengage wheel bolt caps with the designated tool.



2. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.
The wheels might be protected by security wheel bolts. To loosen these specific bolts, attach the adapter onto the head of the bolt before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the tool box



3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.
4. With the jack correctly aligned, jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.
5. Unscrew the wheel bolts
6. Change the wheel.
7. Screw on the wheel bolts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and

tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 115 Nm.

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, note that the wheel bolts can also be used for the steel spare wheel. In this case, the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tire valve before installing. Install wheel bolt caps.
11. Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools and the adapter for the security wheel bolts.
12. Check the tire pressure of the installed tire and the wheel bolt torque as soon as possible.

Tire Repair Kit

Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with the tire repair kit.

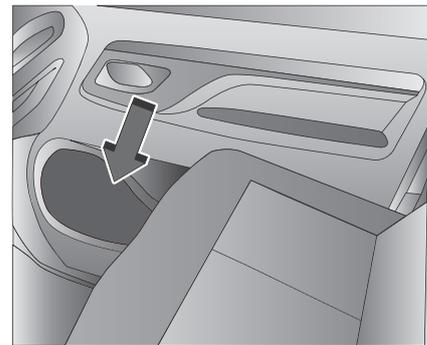
Do not remove foreign bodies from the tires.

Tire damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tire's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tire repair kit.

Warning

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
Do not use for a lengthy period.
Steering and handling may be affected.

In the case of a flat tire:
Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
The tire repair kit is located in a bag in the passenger door compartment.



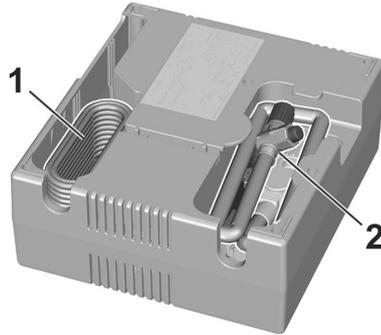
Tire Repair Procedure

Warning

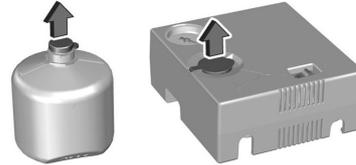
Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

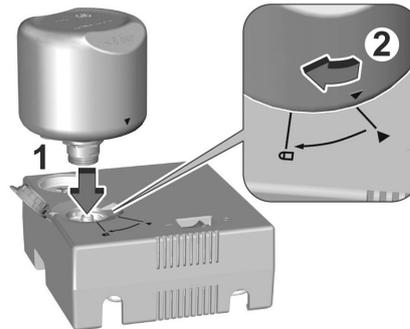
1. Remove the sealant bottle and the compressor.
2. Pull speed limit label from sealant bottle and place it in driver's visible area.



3. Remove the electrical connection cable (1) and air hose (2) from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.



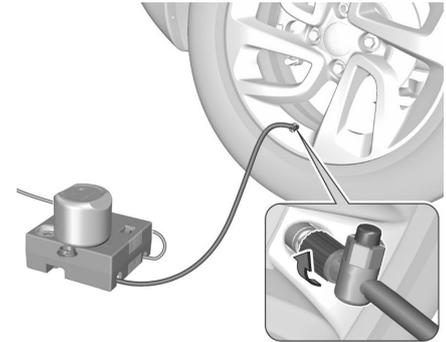
4. Open sealant bottle and lift the lid.



5. First, insert sealant bottle into the compressor and align the tri-

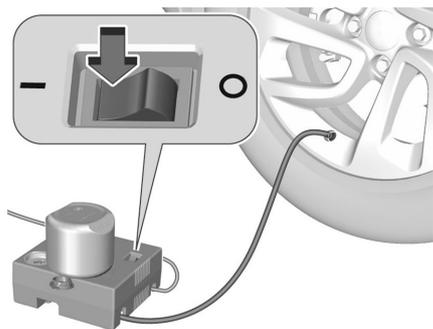
angle symbols (1). Then, push down sealant bottle and turn it to the lock position (2).

6. Set the compressor near the tire in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
7. Unscrew valve cap from defective tire.



8. Screw the filler hose to the tire valve.
9. The switch on the compressor must be set to \bigcirc .

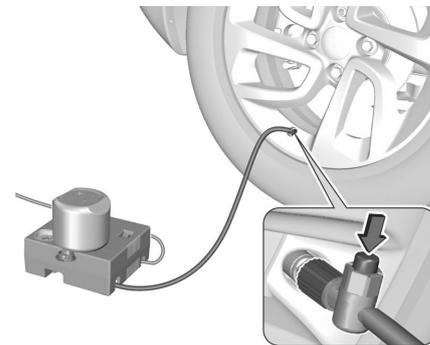
10. Connect the compressor plug to the 12 V power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric engine is ready



11. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to **I**. The tire is filled with sealant.
12. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 600 kPa (6 bar) whilst the seal-

ant cartridge is emptying (approx. 30 s). Then the pressure starts to drop.

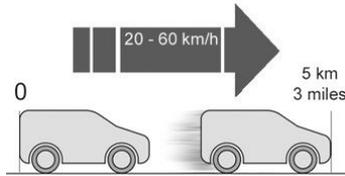
13. All of the sealant is pumped into the tire. Then the tire is being inflated.
14. The prescribed tire pressure should be obtained within ten minutes. When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor. If the prescribed tire pressure is not obtained within ten minutes, remove the tire repair kit. Move the vehicle one tire rotation. Reattach the tire repair kit and continue the filling procedure for ten minutes. If the prescribed tire pressure is still not obtained, the tire is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



Drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose. Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.

15. Detach the tire repair kit. Remove sealant bottle from compressor. Screw the filler hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tire repair kit.
16. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.

17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tire. Drive between 20 km/h and 60 km/h. After driving approx. 5 km but no more than ten minutes, stop and check tire pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tire valve when doing this.



Fill tire as described before. Drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose. If tire pressure hasn't decreased under 200 kPa (2 bar), set it to the correct value. Otherwise the vehicle must not be used. Seek assistance of a workshop. Repeat the checking procedure once more after driving further 10 km but no more than ten minutes to check that there is no more loss of pressure.

18. If the tire pressure has fallen below 200 kPa (2 bar), the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.
18. Stow away tire repair kit.

Note

The compressor can also be used, without injecting sealant, to check and adjust the tyre pressures.

Note

The driving characteristics of the repaired tire are severely affected, therefore have this tire replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 700 kPa (7 bar).

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle.

Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

Note

The driving characteristics of the repaired tire are severely affected, therefore have this tire replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes. Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant cartridge. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

Jump starting

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

Do not start with quick charger. A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Caution

Only jump start another vehicle with an ICE vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from

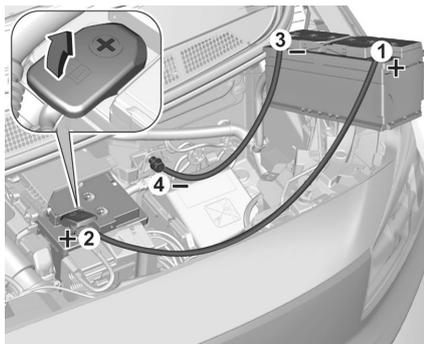
the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid, which can cause injury and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross-section of at least 16 mm² (25 mm² for diesel engines).

- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.

Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (1).
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (2).
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment (4).

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 s at an interval of 1 min.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.

4. Switch on electrical consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Fuel cell version

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

12V Battery Charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
- If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Caution

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

Caution

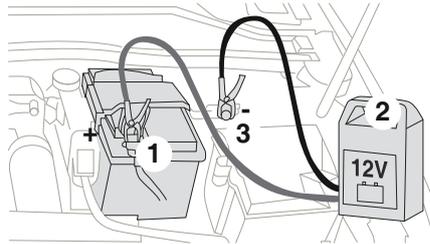
Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.

Never reverse polarities.

Note

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

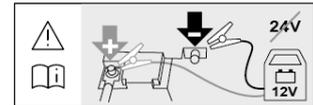


- Switch off charger (2) before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the cables of charger (2) as follows:

- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery (1).
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point (3) on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger (2) before disconnecting the cables from battery (1).

Caution

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



Warning

Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not

cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

Disconnecting / Connecting Battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.

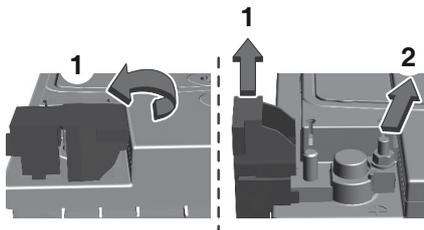
Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

- Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lights, etc.).
- Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

After accessing the 12 V battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

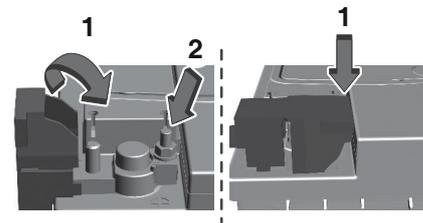
Quick-Release Battery Clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- Raise lever (1) fully to release clamp (2).
- Remove clamp (2) by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise lever (1) fully.
- Refit open clamp (2) on the (+) terminal.
- Push clamp (2) fully down.
- Lower lever (1) to lock clamp (2).
- Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

Caution

Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible.
Start the procedure again.

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:

- Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Note

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing The Vehicle



- Remove the cover cap.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools.



- Screw in the towing eye clockwise as far as it will go.
- Attach a tow rope or better a tow rod to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

- Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Caution

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

- Switch the selector lever to neutral.
- Release the parking brake.

Caution

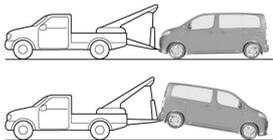
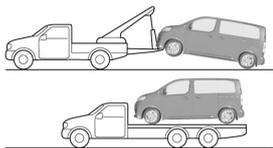
Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 80 km/h nor further than 100 km. In all other cases and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.



When towing a BEV / FCEV or a vehicle equipped with an automatic transmission, transport the vehicle on a platform or tow it with the front wheels lifted.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

- After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
- Insert cover cap again.

Towing Another Vehicle



- Remove the cover cap.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools.



- Screw in the towing eye clockwise as far as it will go.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

- Attach a tow rope or better a tow rod to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

- After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
- Insert cover cap again.

Maintenance And Vehicle Care

Introduction To Maintenance And

Vehicle Care	212
General information.....	212
Very cold climate covers.....	212
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal	212
Service Information	212
Scheduled servicing.....	213
Periodic checks	213
Cheking Fluids Level	213
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts.....	217
Engine oil	217
Washer fluid	217
AdBlue.....	217
Brake and clutch fluids	219
Antifreeze coolant	219
Engine compartment	219
Access to engine compartment	219
Engine	220
12V Battery	220
Engine washing	222
Vehicle maintenance	222
Wiper blade replacement	222
Refill AdBlue (Exhaust Emission Fluid)	223
Air intake	224
Engine Oil Filter	224
Engine Air Filter	224
Air Conditioner Maintenance	224

Drive Belt Inspection	224
Compartment Filter	225
Diesel Filter	225
Fuses	225
Installing electrical accessories.....	225
Light replacement	226
Bulb replacement	226
Halogen headlights	226
LED headlights	228
Front fog lights	228
Front turn lights	229
Tail light assembly	229
Side turn lights	232
Centre high-mounted brake light....	232
Number plate light.....	233
Interior lights	234
Tyres and wheels	234
Tyre safety information	234
Winter tyres	234
Tread depth	234
Allowed tire and rim sizes	235
Wheel covers	235
Tyre chains	235
Wheel Changing	235
Vehicle storage	236
Storage for a long period of time (ICE).....	236
Storage for a long period of time (BEV).....	237
Putting back into operation (ICE)...	237
Putting back into operation (BEV).....	237
Bodywork-exterior care	238

General recommendations.....	238
Locks.....	238
Washing.....	238
Exterior lights.....	238
Polishing.....	239
Windows and wiper blades.....	239
Glass panel.....	239
Wheels and tyres.....	239
Paintwork damage.....	239
Underbody.....	239
Liquid gas system.....	239
Towing equipment.....	239
Decals.....	239
Interior care	240
General recommendations.....	240
Seat belts maintenance.....	240
Plastic and coated parts.....	240
Instrument cluster and displays.....	240
Glass surfaces.....	240
Fabric parts.....	240
Leather surfaces.....	240
Floor materials.....	240

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

General Information

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products — even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval. Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Manufacturer. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel or electric power consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Caution

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board

electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

Caution

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Very Cold Climate Covers

In order to prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan, it is recommended to install removable protection covers.

The protection covers must be professionally installed. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Caution

The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The ambient temperature is above 10 °C.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is driven at speeds above 120 km/h.

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



High-voltage battery

The high voltage battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations are followed. If it becomes necessary to replace the high voltage battery, contact a workshop for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock and damage to the environment.

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g.

for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customised service schedules.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet.

The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly, as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Fuel cell version

The service interval for the fuel cell vehicle is 15,000 km or one year, whichever comes first.

Scheduled servicing

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by dealer or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, dealer selects and offers very specific products.

Checking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer.

Warning

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Warning

Take care when working under the hood, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Warning

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Engine oil

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used.

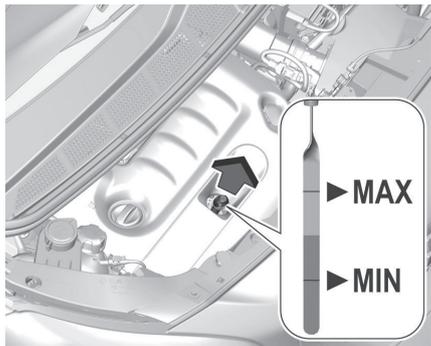
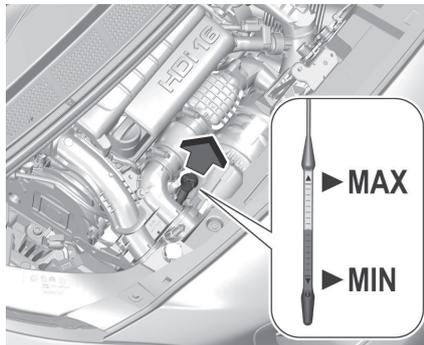
Recommended fluids and lubricants.

The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

Caution

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.

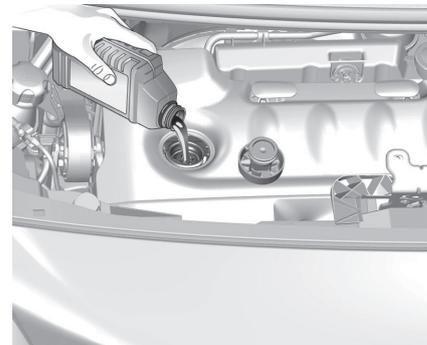


Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

Warning

Insert dipstick fully up to the stop on the handle. Ensure that no engine oil gets into the engine compartment, as this increases risk of fire.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil. We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.



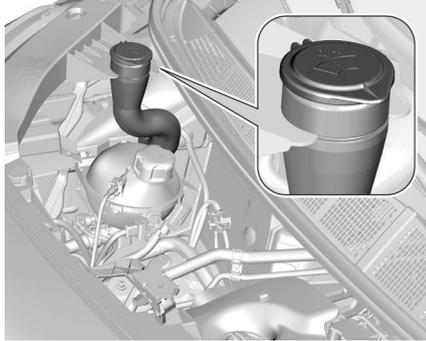
The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

Washer fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid that contains antifreeze.

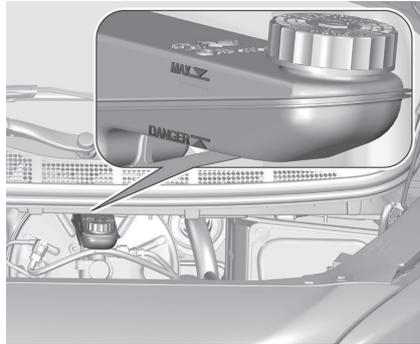
Caution

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Brake fluid

Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **DANGER** and **MAX** marks. If fluid level is below **DANGER**, seek the assistance of a workshop.

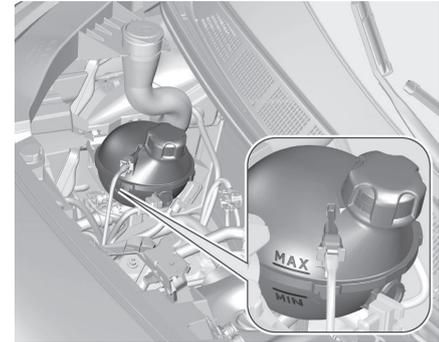
Coolant level - fuel cell

Caution

The coolant reservoir may contain traces of hydrogen which is normal. Using the wrong coolant will cause severe damage to the fuel cell system. Only qualified service personnel are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

Caution

An excessively coolant level can cause damage to the fuel cell system.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the MIN mark. If the coolant level is too low, seek the assistance of a workshop.

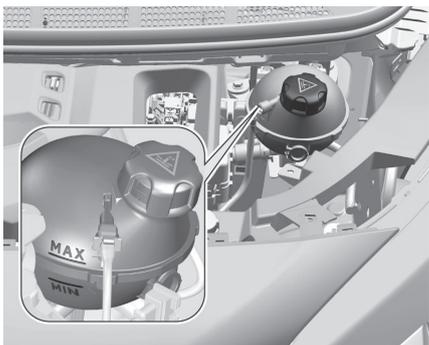
Coolant level - high voltage components

Caution

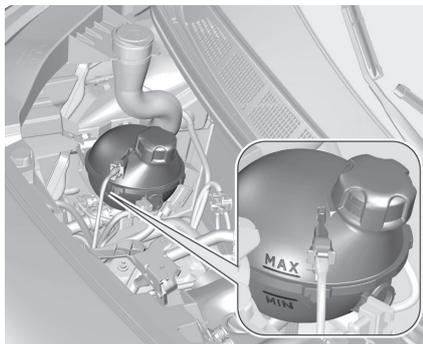
Using the wrong coolant will cause severe damages to the high voltage components. Only qualified service personnel are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

Caution

An excessively low coolant level can cause damage to the high-voltage components.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. If the coolant level is too low, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Coolant level - BEV

If the coolant level is at the MIN mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

Caution

Using the wrong coolant will cause severe damages to the high voltage components. Only qualified service personnel are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

Coolant level - ICE

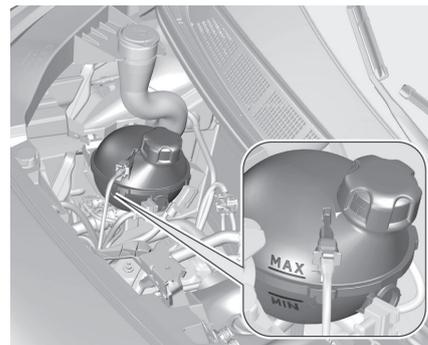
The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

Caution

Only use approved antifreeze.

Caution

A too low coolant level can cause engine damage.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

Warning

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil ageing control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.

Topping up engine oil

Caution

In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose of it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Washer Fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

AdBlue®

General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueInjection) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.

The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, nonflammable, colourless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue®. In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue®.
In case of contact, rinse off with water.

AdBlue® freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue® pre-heater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue® pre-heater works automatically. In some circumstances below the mentioned temperature, an error message appears in the Driver Information Centre. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue® is liquefied.

Note

Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue® is usable without quality loss.

The typical AdBlue® consumption is approx. 2 l per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

Level warnings

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue®, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

- The first possible warning is **Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 2400 km**.

When switching on the ignition, this warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range.

Additionally, control indicator  will illuminate and a chime will sound.

Driving is possible without any restrictions.

- The next warning level is entered with a range below 800 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator  will illuminate and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue® before entering the next warning level. When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 100 km until the AdBlue® tank has been topped-up.

- The next warning level is entered with a range below 100 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator  will flash and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue® as soon as possible before the AdBlue® tank is completely empty. Otherwise, a restart of the engine will not be possible.

When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 10 km until the AdBlue® tank has been topped-up.

- The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue® tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning message will be displayed:
Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented
Additionally, control indicator  will flash and a chime will sound. Refill the tank to a level of at least 5 l of AdBlue®, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

Note

Depending on the engine different levels may apply.

High emission warnings

In the event of a fault with the emissions control system, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

- If a fault is detected for the first time, the warning **Emissions fault** is displayed.

Additionally, control indicators  and  will illuminate and a chime will

sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions.

If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the emissions control system.

- If the fault is confirmed by the emission control system, the following message will be displayed: **Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 1100 km.**

Additionally, control indicators ,  and  will illuminate and a chime will sound.

When driving, the message is displayed every 30 s while the fault persists.

- If the last warning level is entered, the following warning message will be displayed: **Emissions fault: Starting prevented**

Additionally, control indicators ,  and  will illuminate and a chime will sound.

Consult a workshop for assistance.

Brake And Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture, which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Antifreeze Coolant

Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.

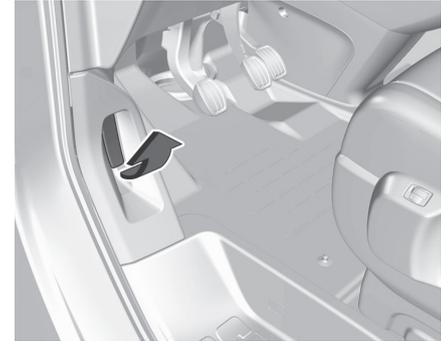
This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Engine compartment

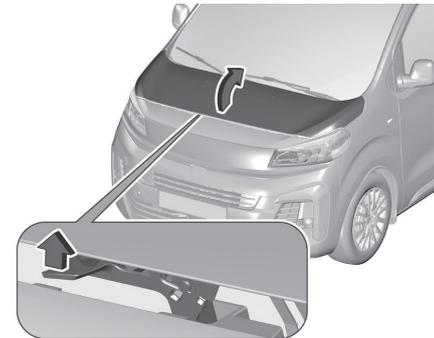
Access To Engine Compartment

Opening

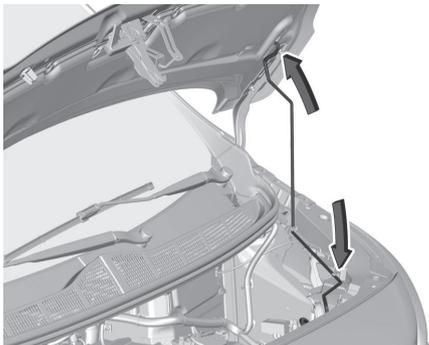
- Open the driver's door.



- Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



- Push the safety catch upwards and open the bonnet.



- Secure the bonnet support.

Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder. Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

Caution

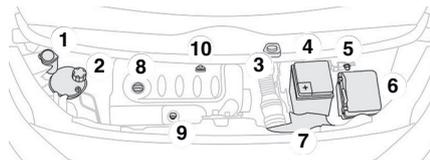
Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents

Engine

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only. The locations of the following components may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.

ICE

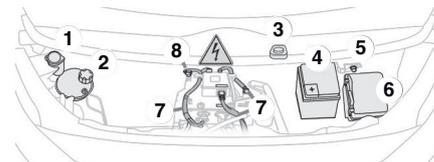


1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Priming pump*

10. Priming pump*

* Depending on engine.

BEV



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. 400 V electrical circuit
8. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

12V Battery

The vehicle battery is maintenancefree provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point. Not using the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off

with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

All battery information can be found online at

<https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/index.html>.

The vehicle battery must be replaced by a workshop.

Charging the vehicle battery

Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger.

Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Discharge protection

Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre. When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear window, heated steering wheel, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost that may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Symbols



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.



Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.



The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.



For more information, refer to the handbook.



Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Heating functionalities

Note

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Power saving mode

This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery. These consumers, such as the infotainment system, windscreen wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc. can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than 10 minutes to use the consumers for approx. 5 minutes

- for more than 10 minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

Engine Washing

⚠ Warning

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

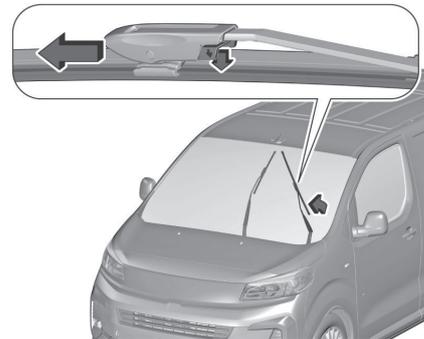
Vehicle maintenance

Wiper Blade Replacement

Caution

Never attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

Windscreen



Switch off the ignition.

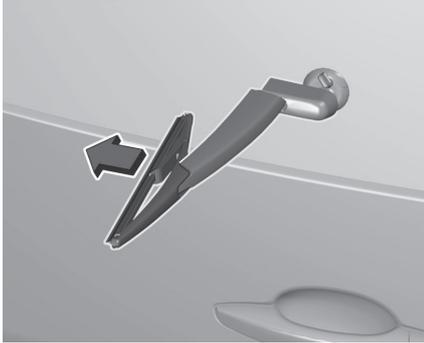
Within 1 minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper lever to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, disengage and remove the wiper blade.

Attach the wiper blade to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Rear window



Lift the wiper arm. Disengage the wiper blade as shown in the illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages. Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid)

Caution

Only use AdBlue® that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.

Do not use additives.

Do not dilute AdBlue®.

Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Note

Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue® bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue® in bottles or canisters is available in many filling stations and can be purchased e.g.at dealers and other retail outlets.

Since AdBlue® has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

Note

Refill the AdBlue tank to a level of at least 10 l, to ensure that the new AdBlue level is being detected.

In case AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for ten minutes making sure that vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h.
2. If AdBlue® refill is detected successfully, AdBlue® supplydriven warnings or limitations will disappear.

If AdBlue® refill is still not detected, seek the assistance of a workshop.

If AdBlue® must be refilled at temperatures below -11 °C, the refilling of AdBlue® may not be detected by the system. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue® is liquified.

Note

When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

The AdBlue® tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed. The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.

1. Remove key from ignition switch.
2. Open the driver's door to access the AdBlue® filler neck.



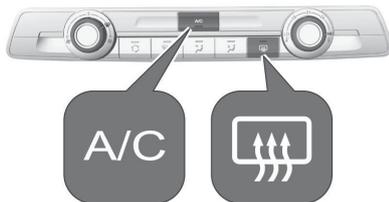
3. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
4. Open AdBlue® canister.
5. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
6. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to five minutes.
7. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 s.
8. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.

9. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

Note

Dispose of AdBlue® canister according to environmental requirements. Hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before AdBlue® dries out.

Air Intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Engine Oil Filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Engine Air Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), change it twice as often, if necessary.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Drive Belt Inspection

⚠ Warning

Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.

Have the seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Compartment Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), change it twice as often, if necessary.

Note

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Diesel Filter

The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.

As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 60 km/h, with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm, for about 15 minutes (until the warning lamp goes out).

If it is not possible to reach 60 km/h, leave the engine running at idle for about 15 minutes, then drive with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm for 15 minutes.

Caution

Do not switch off the engine until the filter is fully regenerated; repeated intervals can degrade the engine oil prematurely.
Regenerating the filter while the vehicle is stationary is not recommended.

Note

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

Note

New vehicle

During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Fuses

A defective fuse must be replaced by a workshop.

Warning

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or qualified workshop. The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Installing Electrical Accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Caution

The Manufacturer shall not be held liable for expenses resulting from car repair or anomalies resulting from the installation of accessories not provided or recommended by the Manufacturer and not installed according to specifications, in particular when the combined consumption of all additional equipment connected exceeds 10 mA.

Light replacement

Bulb Replacement

Before replacing a bulb, ensure that all exterior and interior lights and the ignition are switched off. All doors have to be closed.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands. Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

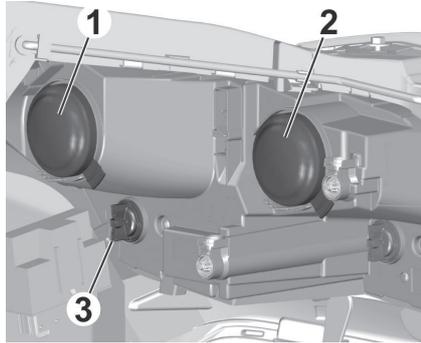
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Bulb check

After a bulb replacement, switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

Halogen Headlights

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam, high beam, daytime running lights and parking lights.

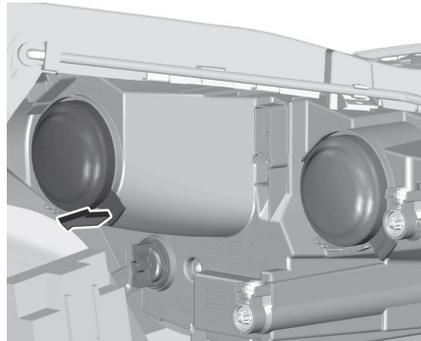


Low beam (1)

High beam (2)

Daytime running lights and parking lights (3)

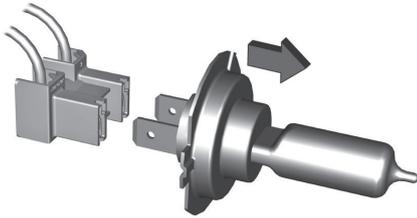
Low beam



1. Remove the protective cover.

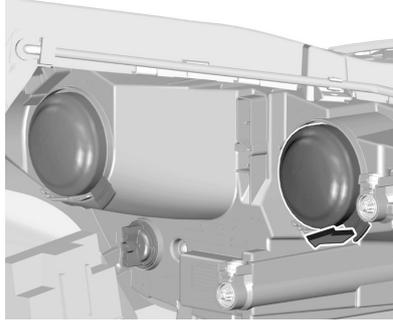


2. Press latch and remove the bulb socket from reflector housing.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Reinstall the cover.

High beam

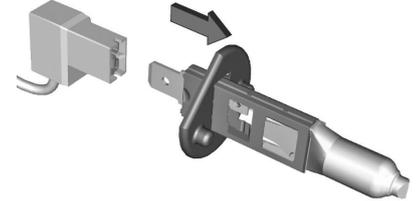


1. Remove the protective cover.



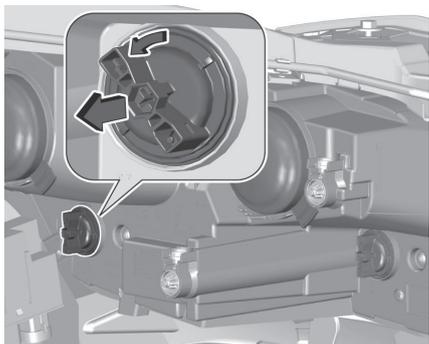
2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer.
Swivel the spring clip upwards.

Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

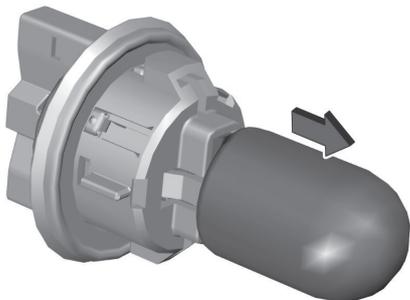


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Reinstall the cover.

Daytime running lights and parking lights



1. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the light assembly.



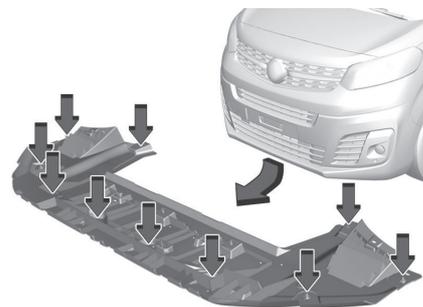
2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pulling.
3. Replace and insert the new bulb into the socket
4. Insert the bulb socket into the light assembly by turning clockwise and engage.

LED Headlights

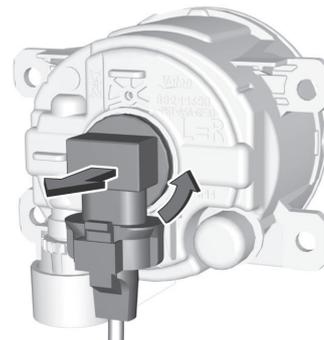
Headlights for low and high beam, daytime running lights, parking lights and turn lights are designed as LEDs and cannot be changed.

Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

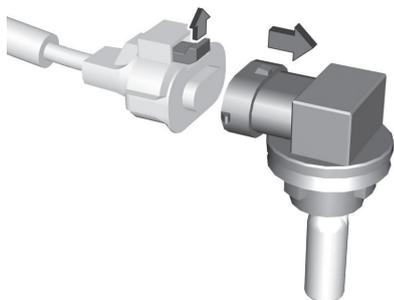
Front Fog Lights



1. Unscrew and remove the underfloor cover.



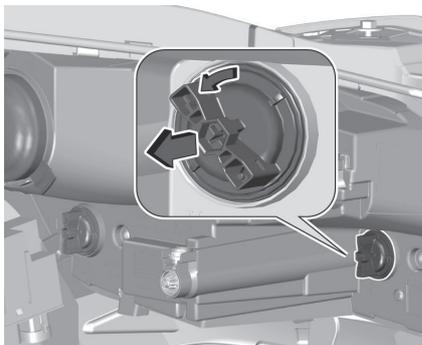
- Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the light assembly.



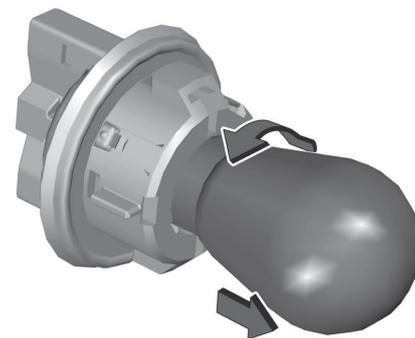
- Disengage the plug connector by pulling the retaining lug.
- Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector. Note that the bulb and the socket are one unit and have to be changed together.
- Insert the bulb socket into the light assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
- Mount the light assembly by tightening the two screws.

- Attach and engage the cover.

Front Turn Lights



- Rotate the bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.



- Slightly press down the bulb, turn it anticlockwise and remove it from the socket.
- Replace and insert the new bulb into socket by turning clockwise.
- Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and turn clockwise.

Tail Light Assembly

All body styles except platform cab



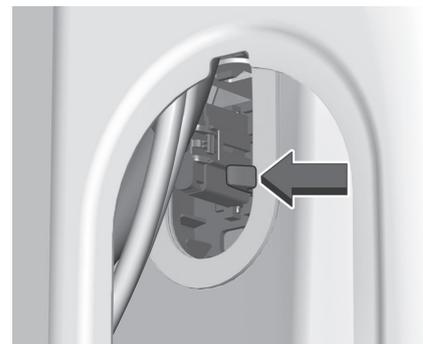
1. Vehicles with a cover hiding the lower tail light assembly screw: remove cover by carefully releasing its retaining lugs with a screwdriver and tilting the cover slightly towards the outside.



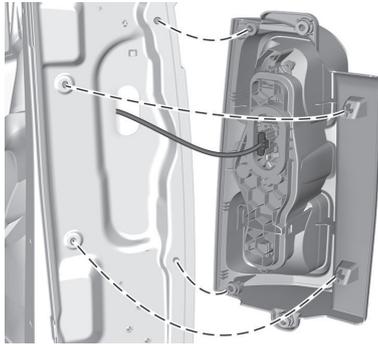
2. Unscrew and remove the two screws.



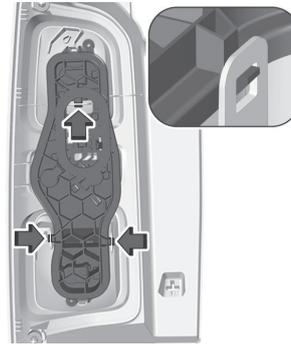
3. Vehicles with air vent or cover behind the tail light, in the trim: Remove air vent or cover.



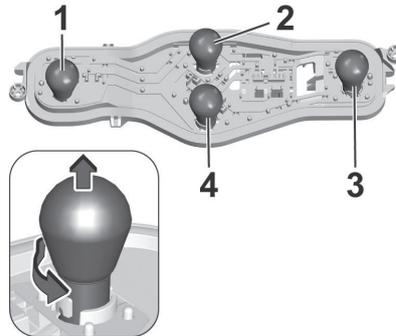
4. While holding the light assembly, push the retaining lug which holds the tail light assembly in the body.



5. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
6. Detach the cable from the retainer in the light assembly.

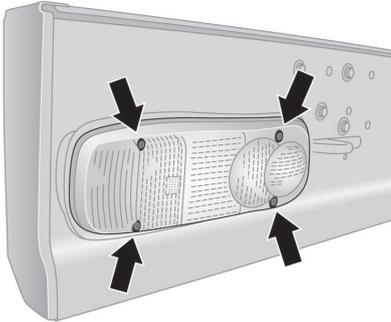


7. Disengage the central retaining lug, pull the bulb carrier and disengage the remaining retaining lugs.

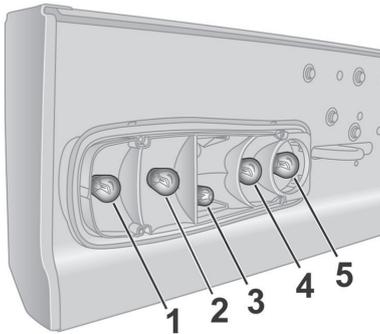


8. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier.
Replace the bulb: Tail light/parking light (1) Reverse light (2) Brake light/parking light (3) Turn light/hazard warning flasher (4)
9. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
10. Attach the cable to the retainer.
11. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.
12. Clip in cover which may have covered the lower tail light assembly screw.
13. Attach cover or air vent behind the tail light if removed before.

Platform cab



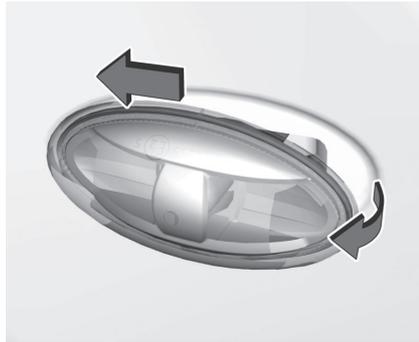
1. Remove the four screws from the lens.
2. Remove lens from the aperture.



3. Push bulb into socket slightly, rotate anticlockwise, remove and renew bulb.
Turn light (1) Brake light (2) Tail light (3) Reversing light (4) Rear fog light, may be on one side only (5)
4. Install lens in aperture and replace the four screws.

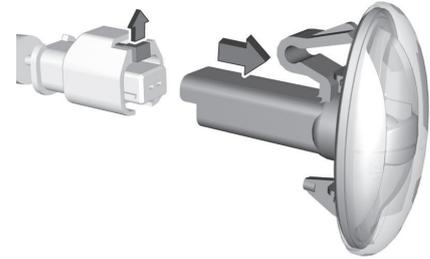
Side Turn Lights

To replace the bulb, remove the light housing:



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it at the back. It may help to use a screwdriver to lever out the light housing from the body. Wrap

the tip of the screwdriver with a cloth to prevent paint damage.

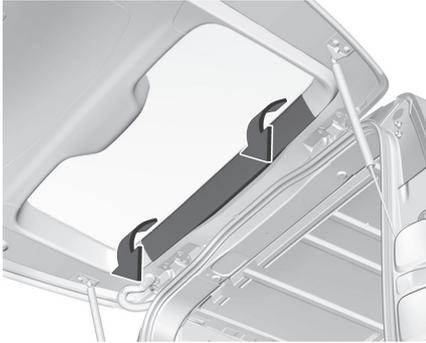


2. Pull the retaining lug upwards and remove the bulb socket from the plug connector.
3. Replace the complete unit.
4. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

Centre High-Mounted Brake Light

Vehicles with hinged doors or tailgate

1. Open the rear doors.
2. a) vehicles with tailgate:



Loose the inner trim from clips by swivelling it upwards and downwards. Pull trim off carefully.

- b) vehicles with hinged doors: Wrap a cloth around the tip of a slot screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Remove the inner cover or air vent with the screwdriver.



3. Push the brake light assembly carefully out through the recess.
4. Detach the cable from the retainer in the light assembly.



5. Remove the socket of the defect bulb by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
6. Renew bulb.
7. Install brake light assembly like explained above, in reversed order.

Number Plate Light

1. a) vehicles with tailgate:



Insert a thin screwdriver, e.g., in one of the recesses of the cover and push it outwards to unclip it. Remove the cover.

- b) vehicles with hinged doors:



Insert a screwdriver in one of the recesses of the cover and lever it out. Remove the cover



2. Pull the bulb from the bulb holder and replace it.
3. Attach the cover.

Interior Lights

Have the following lights replaced by a workshop:

- courtesy light, reading lights
- load compartment light
- instrument panel illumination

Tyres and wheels

Tyre Safety Information

Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Winter Tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tyre speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals. For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their

position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every six years.

Allowed Tire And Rim Sizes

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the tyre deflation detection system and make other vehicle modifications.

Have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

⚠ Warning

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

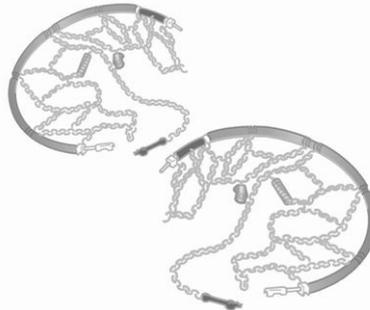
If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge. Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

⚠ Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

Tyre Chains



Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels. The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Only use tyre chains designed to be used with tire type of the vehicle:

- For 16 inch tires, only use 12 mm link tire chains.
- For 17 inch tires, only use König K-Summit Van K84 tire chains.

Note

The use of tyre chains and the maximum allowed speed is regulated by country-specific legislation.

⚠ Warning

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

When fitting the tyre chains follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the tyre chains.

After having fitted the tyre chains, stop the vehicle after having driven a short distance and make sure that the tyre chains are correctly tightened.

Wheel Changing

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.

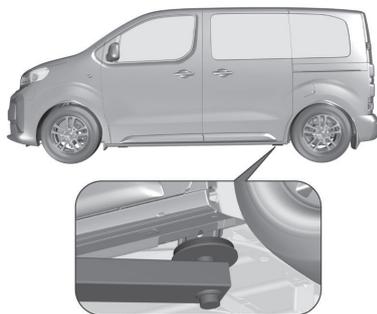
- If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

Warning

Do not grease wheel bolts.

Jacking positions

The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter / summer tyres.



The rear arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



The front arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Vehicle storage

Storage For A Long Period Of Time (ICE)

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Fill in one bottle fuel additive Unik+ Diesel into the fuel tank.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Drive 35 km to fill the fuel pipe with the mixture.
- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.

- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Note that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

Storage For A Long Period Of Time (BEV)

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked..
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to P. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

- Discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the instrument cluster.
- Do not plug in the charging cable.
- Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10 °C and 30 °C.
- Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high-voltage battery.
- Remove the black negative (-) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals in the engine compartment.
- Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Putting Back Into Operation (ICE)

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialize the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plates if necessary.

Putting Back Into Operation (BEV)

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the 12 V vehicle battery. Initialise the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

Bodywork-exterior care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Warning

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components! Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

Note

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away. When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals). Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar). Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These

substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers). Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash Manufacturer's instructions.

The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove aerial and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel

housings are also thoroughly rinsed out. Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damage.

Caution

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of 4 to 9.

Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Exterior Lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper and do not clean them dry.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows And Wiper Blades

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

Glass Panel

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner to clean the glass panel.

Wheels And Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners. Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating, whereas other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen / rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Liquid Gas System



Liquid gas is heavier than air and can collect in sink points. Take care when performing work at the underbody in a pit.

For painting work and when using a drying booth at a temperature above 60 °C, the liquid gas tank must be removed. Do not make any modifications to the liquid gas system.

Towing Equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Decals



Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Note

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C). Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.

Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Interior care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Warning

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.

Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!

To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Seat Belts Maintenance

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

Plastic And Coated Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Instrument Cluster And Displays

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Glass Surfaces

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner to clean the glass panel.

Fabric Parts

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colour-fast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Leather Surfaces

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Floor Materials

Warning

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, potentially causing unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance that may result in collision and injury.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it

is recommended to buy certified floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

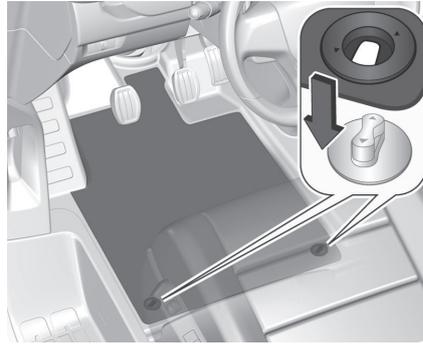
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Inserting and removing the floor mats

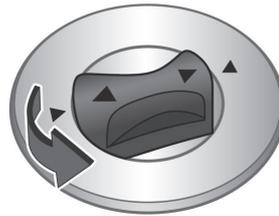
The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

To install the driver's side floor mat:

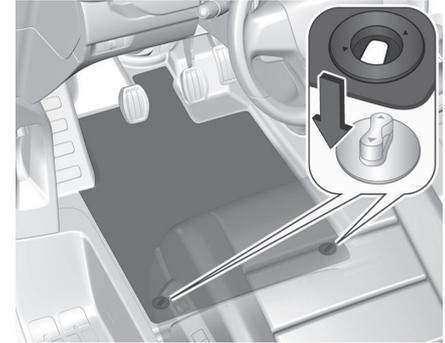
1. Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible.



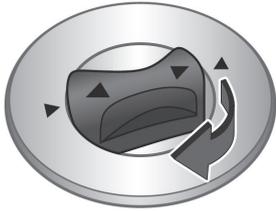
2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.



3. Turn retainers anti-clockwise for a quarter turn.
1. Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible.



2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.



3. Turn retainers clockwise for a quarter turn.

Removing

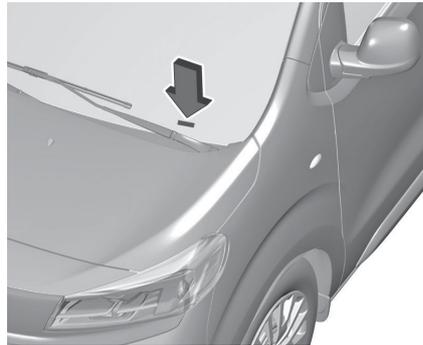
1. Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Turn retainers a quarter turn towards the opposite direction than during installation.
3. Remove the mat.

Technical Specifications

- Vehicle identification..... 243
 - Vehicle identification number (VIN) 243
 - License plate 243
 - Engine identification 244
 - Tyre information label 244
- Vehicle data 245
 - Dimensions 245
 - Engine data 246
 - High voltage battery 248
 - Electric motor 249
 - Towed loads..... 250
- Fluid capacities 252
 - Engine oil 253
 - Fuel tank 254
 - AdBlue tank 255
- Wheels and tyres..... 256
 - Compatibility of Wheels And Tires 256
 - Tightening torques 256
 - Tyre pressures 256

Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

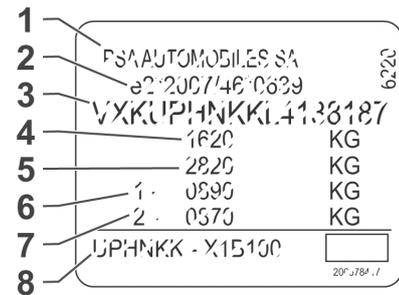


The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen.

License Plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.



Information on identification label:

- 1: manufacturer
- 2: type approval number
- 3: vehicle identification number
- 4: permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5: permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6: maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7: maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
- 8: manufacturer address, vehiclespecific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.

Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories.

Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.

Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

Engine Identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

Tyre Information Label



The tyre pressure label indicates the unladen and laden tyre inflation pressures.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

Size	L1	L2	L3
Length [mm]	4609	4959	5306 / 5309
Width without exterior mirrors [mm]	1920	1920	1920
Width with exterior mirrors [mm]	2204	2204	2204
Height without roof railing [mm]	1892 - 1950 ³⁾	1881 - 1949 ³⁾	1890 - 1940 ¹⁾
Wheelbase [mm]	2925	3275	3275
Turning circle diameter [m]	11.8	12.9	12.9

¹⁾ with increased payload

Engine data

Sales designation	1.5 Turbo	1.5 Turbo	2.0 Turbo
Engineering code	DV5RUCd	DV5RUC	DW10FDDU
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1499	1499	1997
Engine power[kW] at rpm	75 3500	88 3500	103 3750
Torque [Nm] at rpm	270 1600	300 1750	340 / 370 2000
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel

Sales designation	2.0 Turbo	2.0 Turbo	2.2 Turbo	2.2 Turbo	Electric engine	Fuel cell vehicle
Engineering code	DW10FDU	DW10FDCU	B22LDH0	B22LCH0	ZAE / ZLE	ZLE
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1997	1997	2184	2184	-	-
Engine power [kW] at rpm	110 4400	130 3750	110	130	100 / 105 -	100 / 45 ¹⁾ -
Torque [Nm] at rpm	370 2000	400 2000	370	400	270 -	265 ²⁾ -
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	-	Hydrogen

1) Fuel cell power

2) preliminary data at time of printing

High voltage battery

Engine	Electric engine	Fuel cell vehicle
Battery capacity [kWh]	50 / 75	11.3

Electric motor

Electric motor	
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	100/136
Traction battery	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Battery pack	S: 15 modules (L2/L3) XL: 27 modules (L2/L3)
Installed capacity (kWh)	49 or 75
Domestic charging	
Mode 2	
Alternating current (AC) voltage	230
Rating (A)	8 or 16
Accelerated charging	
Mode 3	
Alternating current (AC) voltage	230 (single-phase or three-phase)
Rating (A)	16 or 32
Superfast charging	
Mode 4	
Direct current (DC) voltage	400

Towed Loads

**Model codes:****ZZKXZ**

Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient

1,000

Unbraked trailer (kg)

750

Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)

60

**Model codes:****V1ESZ/V1EZZ/VZESZ/VZEZZ****Code:****ZLE ZE BL6S
ZLE ZE BL6XL**

Length

M, XL
(L2/L3)Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) 5-6-7-8-9 seats
on a 10% or 12% gradient

1,000

Unbraked trailer (kg)

750

Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)

60

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

 Warning
When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

 Warning
Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.

Fluid capacities

Engine Oil

Engine	DV5RUCd DV5RUC	DW10FDU DW10FDCU DW10FDDU
including filter [l]	5.75	6.0
between MIN and MAX [l]	1	1.2

Fuel Tank

Diesel, refilling quantity [l]	69
Hydrogen, refilling quantity (kg)	5.2

AdBlue Tank

AdBlue, refilling quantity [l]

19 / 20

Wheels and tyres

Compatibility Of Wheels And Tires

225/55 R 18 98 V

- 225** : tyre width, mm
- 55** : cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
- R** : belt type: Radial
- RF** : type: RunFlat
- 18** : wheel diameter, inches
- 98** : load index e.g. 98 is equivalent to 750 kg
- V** : speed code letter

Speed code letter:

- Q** : up to 160 km/h
- S** : up to 180 km/h
- T** : up to 190 km/h
- H** : up to 210 km/h
- V** : up to 240 km/h
- W** : up to 270 km/h

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of your vehicle. Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Directional tyres

Directional tyres should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

Tightening Torques

Caution
If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, tighten the wheel bolts manually at least for the first five turns.

Depending on the wheel rim material, two different bolts with different tightening torques are available.



Tightening torque for alloy wheel rims is 125 Nm.



Tightening torque for steel wheel rims is 125 Nm.

Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheel rims.

Tyre Pressures

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.

This also applies to vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system.

The tyre pressure information label on the left or right door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the corresponding tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Identify the payload.
2. Identify the respective tyre.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

 **Warning**

For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase.

Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

Customer information

Customer information	258
Declaration of Conformity	258
Fuel consumption - CO ₂ - Emissions	259
REACH.....	259
Registered trademarks	260
Apple Inc.....	260
Bluetooth SIG, Inc.....	260
DivX, LLC.....	260
Google Inc.....	260
Emergency call data recording and privacy	260
Data processing.....	260
Data storage.....	260
Access to data.....	260
Event data recorders	261
Operating data in the vehicle.....	261
Comfort and Infotainment functions.....	262
Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.....	262
Online services.....	263
Proprietary services.....	263
Onboard fuel consumption meter (OBFCEM).....	263
Third-party services.....	263
In case of an accident.....	263
Radio frequency identification (RFID)	264

Customer information

Declaration Of Conformity

The certificates for radio transmission systems are available at the following internet address: www.opel.com/conformity

Radio transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 by the United Kingdom. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following internet address:

www.opel.com/conformity.
Importer is Opel Automobile GmbH, Bahnhofspatz, 65423 Ruesselsheim am Main, Germany.

Infotainment system Multimedia Navi

Continental
LCIE Bureau Veritas-Site de Fontenay aux Roses, 33 avenue du général Leclerc, 92260 Fontenay aux Roses,

France Operation frequency (MHz)
Maximum output (dBm)
2400.0 - 2483.5 2.2
2400.0 - 2483.5 15

Infotainment system Radio

Clarion
244 rue du Pré à Varois, 54670 Custines,
France
Operation frequency:
2400 - 2480 MHz
Maximum output: 4 dBm

Infotainment system Multimedia

Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH
Robert-Bosch-Straße 200, 31139
Hildesheim, Germany
Operation frequency (MHz) Maximum
output (dBm)
2402.0 - 2480.0 17
2412.0 - 2472.0 4.15

BTA module

Magneti Marelli S.p.A.
Viale A. Borletti 61/63, 20011 Corbetta,
Italy
Operation frequency (MHz) Maximum
output (dBm)
880 -915 33
1710 - 1785 24
1850 -1910 24
1920 - 1980 24
2500 - 2570 23

Antenna module

Hirschmann Car Communication GmbH
Stuttgarter Strasse 45-51, 72654
Neckartenzlingen, Germany
Operation frequency: N/A
Maximum output: N/A

Radio remote control transmitter

Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG
Steeger Straße 17, 42551 Velbert,
Germany
Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz
Maximum output: 10 dBm

Radio remote control receiver

Delphi European, Middle Eastern &
African Regional Offices Customer
Technology
Center Avenue de Luxembourg, L-4940
Bascharage, G.D. of Luxembourg
Operation frequency: 119 - 128.6
Maximum output:
16 dBμA/m @ 10 m

Electronic key transmitter

Valeo
43 Rue Bayen, 75017 Paris, France
Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz
Maximum output: 10 dBm

Radar unit

ZF TRW Autocruise SAS
Secteur de la Pointe du Diable, Avenue
du technopôle, 29280 Plouzane, France

Operation frequency: 24.15 - 24.25 GHz
Maximum output: 20 dBm

Immobiliser

KOSTAL of America, Inc.
350 Stephenson Hwy, Troy MI 48083,
USA
Operation frequency: 125 kHz
Maximum output: 5 dBμA/m at 10 m

ICASA type approval numbers

List of all Independent
Communications Authority of South
Africa (ICASA) type approval numbers:
TA-2016/121, TA-2016/3261,
TA-2017/2387, TA-2017/2745,
TA-2013/430, TA-2017/1106,
TA-2016/929, TA-2017/3180

**Fuel Consumption - CO2-
Emissions**

ICE The fuel consumption (combined) is
within a range of 8.2 to 6.5 l/100 km.
The CO2 emission is within a range of
216 to 171 g/km.
Fuel cell vehicle Combined range (high
voltage battery and hydrogen tank):
approx. 400 km.

General information

For the values specific to your vehicle,
refer to the Certificate of Conformity
provided with your vehicle or other
national registration documents.

The determination of fuel consumption
is regulated by directive R (EC) No.
715/2007 and No.
2017/1151 (in the latest applicable
version).
The specification of CO2 emissions is
also a constituent of the directive.
The figures given must not be taken as a
guarantee for the actual fuel consumption
of a particular vehicle.
Furthermore, fuel consumption is
dependent on personal driving style as
well as road and traffic conditions.
All values are based on the EU base
model with standard equipment.
The calculation of fuel consumption
takes into account the vehicle's kerb
weight, ascertained in accordance with
the regulations. Optional equipment may
result in slightly higher fuel consumption
and CO2 emission levels and a lower
maximum speed.

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation
and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH)
is a European Union regulation adopted
to improve the protection of human
health and the environment from the
risks that can be posed by chemicals.
Visit www.opel.com/reach for further

information and for access to the Article 33 communication

Registered trademarks

Apple Inc.

Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

DivX, LLC

DivX® and DivX Certified® are registered trademarks of DivX, LLC.

Google Inc.

Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA.

Emergency call data recording and privacy

Data Processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.

The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number.

The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation.

The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national

authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

Data Storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode. The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored. When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access To Data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing

so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at privacyrights@mpsa.com. For more information regarding our contact details, please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data that is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or Infotainment functions. The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional

characteristics in the relevant Owner's Manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Operating Data In The Vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, e.g.:

- vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)

As a rule such data is transient, not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Control units often include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on technical equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)

- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used when necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data which is read out, documents the technical condition of the vehicle or

individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

Comfort And Infotainment Functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings
- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the Infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features. Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and Infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

Smartphone Integration, E.g. Android Auto Or Apple CarPlay

accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone.

Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / Infotainment system.

Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

Online Services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

Proprietary Services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication

system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system

Onboard Fuel Consumption Meter (OBFCM)

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the vehicle. In accordance with Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable). This data is used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles in an anonymised and aggregated way. The collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose can be refused. This can be done by contacting the Customer Care

Centre (contact details available on brand website).

Third-Party Services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question.

The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard. Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

In Case Of An Accident

This vehicle is fitted with an event data recorder. This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision. In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, the system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- any deployment of a restraint system (airbag, seat belt, etc.)

- the status of all seat belts (fastened / unfastened)
- the contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver
- the speed of the vehicle
- the status of some driving and driver assistance systems.

The following are not recorded:

- data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event
- personal data on the driver and any other occupants
- the geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the event data recorder requires both:

- access to the interior of the vehicle or to the event data recorder
- special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer Bosch.
- Aside from the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.

Radio frequency identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as immobiliser. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Opel vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Opel system containing personal information.

Index

Numerics

12V Battery	220
12V Battery Charger	207
12V Power Outlets	75

A

AC On-Off Control	104
Access to engine compartment	219
Active Emergency Braking (AEB)	170
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	165
AdBlue tank	255
AdBlue®	217
Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)	1, 161–196
Air Conditioner Maintenance	224
Air intake	224
Air vents	111
Airbag system	38
Airbag System Malfunction	40
Allowed tire and rim sizes	235
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD)	175
Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)	173
Anti-theft Alarm System	13
Anti-theft Locking System	13
Antifreeze coolant	219
Assist and SOS	198
Assistance Call	198
Audio Settings	122
Automatic AC control	107
Automatic emergency call	198
Automatic Headlights Dipping	70

Automatic light control	66
Automatic Lighting	69
Automatic locking	12
Automatic Park Assist	182
Automatic transmission	135

B

Battery charging operation	145
Blinds	24
Bodywork-exterior care	238
Brake and clutch fluids	219
Brake Assist (BA)	173
Brake fluid	215
Brakes	132
Bulb replacement	226

C

Catalytic converter	141
Central Locking System	9
Charging	145, 149
Charging cables	147
Charging types	146
Cheking Fluids Level	213
Child restraint installation locations	44
Child Restraints	41
Child Seats Recommended	42
Choosing The Media	121
Choosing The Radio Frequency	121
Climate controls	104
Comfort consumption gauge	92
Compartment Filter	225
Compatibility of Wheels And Tires	256
Connection	151
Connectivity	126

Coolant level - BEV	216
Coolant level - fuel cell	215
Coolant level - high voltage components.....	215
Coolant level - ICE	216
Corner Lights	71
Courtesy Lights	71
Cruise control	163
Cupholders	73
Curtain Airbags	40
Customer information	258
Customisation	119

D

Daytime running lights	70
Daytime running lights and parking lights	228
Declaration of Conformity	258
Demisting and defrosting the windows.....	105
Diesel Filter	225
Diesel Fuelling	141
Dimensions	245
Disconnecting / Connecting Battery	208
Disconnection	153
Display	112
Doors	15
Drive Belt Inspection	224
Drive modes	139
Drive Selector (Electric)	138
Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD) ..	189
Driving Mode Selector	139

E

Easy Entry	31
Electric motor	249
Electronic Key System	8
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TC)	174
Emergency Call (eCall)	198
Emergency call data recording and privacy	260
Emergency Signals	68
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal	212
Engine	220
Engine Air Filter	224
Engine compartment	219
Engine coolant temperature gauge	92
Engine data	246
Engine exhaust	140
Engine identification	244
Engine oil	213, 217, 253
Engine Oil Filter	224
Engine oil level monitor	92
Engine washing	222
Event data recorders	261
Exhaust filter	141
Exit lighting	70
Exterior Lights	66
External devices	124

F

Fixed air vents	112
Fluid capacities	252
Folding Front Seats	31
Folding Mirrors	25

Front Airbags	39
Front Armrest	32
Front fog lights	228
Front foglamps	69
Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation ..	41
Front Seat Position	28
Front storage	74
Front turn lights	229
Fuel	141
Fuel consumption - CO2- Emissions ..	259
Fuel level gauge	89
Fuel tank	254
Fuses	225

G

Glove Compartment	73
-------------------------	----

H

Halogen headlights	226
Hazard Warning Lights	197
Head restraints	27
Head Restraints Position	27
Headlight flash	67
Headlight height adjustment	68
Heated Mirrors	25
Heated Seats	31
Heating and ventilation system	106
High beam	67, 227
High voltage battery	248
High-voltage battery charge status	91
High-voltage system	153
Hill Descent Control (HDC)	190
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	191
Horn	63

How To Use This Manual	2	Lighting controls	66	Profiles	119
Hydrogen Fuelling	142	Link to Company App and Website	2	Programmable charging	151
Hydrogen gauge	90	Load compartment	77	Propulsion Type	3
I		Load compartment lighting	72	R	
Ignition switch	63	Load Reduction Mode	155	Radio	121
Immobilizer	15	Low beam	226	Radio (Infotainment system)	114
Info Display	113	M		Radio frequency identification (RFID)	264
Inside Rearview Mirror	25	Making Emergency Call	198	Radio Remote Control Function	6
Instrument cluster	112	Manual Front Seats	29	Rain sensing wiper control	65
Instrument Cluster	88	Manual transmission	137	Reading lights	71
Instrument Panel	85	Massage Seats	31	Rear Doors Child Locks	15
Interior Ambient Lights	72	Maximum AC On-Off Control	105	Rear foglamps	69
Interior care	240	Memorizing A Radio Station	122	Rear Seat Position	32
Interior lights	71, 234	Menu	116	Rear Vision Camera (RVC)	187
Interior Storage / Interior Features	72	Mirrors	24	Rear Window	22
Introduction	2	Multimedia system	125	Rear window wiper and washer	65
Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care	212	N		Rearview Display Mirror	26
J		Navigation	126	Recirculation control	106
Jacking positions	236	Navigation System / Multimedia	114	Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid)	223
Jump starting	205	O		Refuelling	142
K		Odometer	88	Regenerative braking	135
Key with foldaway key section	6	P		Registered trademarks	260
Keys	6	Parking Brake	133	Replacement keys	6
L		Passenger Side Camera	177	Replacing battery in electronic key	8
Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	180	Periodic checks	213	Replacing battery in radio remote control	7
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	178	Phone	122, 127	Reverse lights	70
Lateral Airbags	40	Power button	64	Roof Bars	154
LED headlights	228	Power flow	91	S	
License plate	243	Power Front Seats	30	Safety belts	35
Light replacement	226	Power Outside Mirrors	24	Safety messages	3
		Power Windows	21		

Screen Mirroring	127	Tail light assembly	229	Vehicle storage	236
Screen operation	120	Tailgate Operation	18	Voice Commands	125
Seat Belt Pretensioner	37	Temperature Control	110	W	
Seat belts introduction	35	Tightening torques	256	Warning triangle	199
Seatback Storage	74	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	194	Warning, lights, indicators and messages	93
Seats	28	Tire Repair Kit	202	Washer fluid	215, 217
Selecting A Radio Station	121	Tire Repair Procedure	202	Welcome Lighting	70
Service display	92	Towing equipment	157	Wheel Changing	235
Service Information	212	Towing The Vehicle	209	Wheel Changing Toolkit	199
Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)	175	Traction modes	140	Wheel covers	235
Side turn lights	232	Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)	192	Wheel removal/installation	201
Symbols Keys	3	Trailer towing	156	Widgets	93
Sliding Door Operation	16	Transmission	135	Windows	21
SOS Call Feature	198	Tread depth	234	Windscreen	23
Speed limiter	162	Trip computer	91	Windshield wiper and washer	64
Speedometer	88	Trip odometer	89	Winter tyres	234
Starting and stopping the engine	129	Turn Signals	68	Wiper blade replacement	222
Starting Using Another Vehicle		Tyre chains	235	Wipers and washers	64
Battery	205	Tyre information label	244	Wireless Phone Charger	76
Steering Wheel	62	Tyre pressures	256		
Steering Wheel Adjustment	62	Tyre safety information	234		
Steering Wheel Controls	62, 125	Tyres and wheels	234		
Steering Wheel Heating	63	U			
Steering wheel lock	62	Updating The System	119		
Steering Wheel Shift Paddles	62	USB Ports	75		
Stop & start system	131	V			
Sun Visors	24	Vehicle data	245		
Sunroof	72	Vehicle identification number (VIN) ...	243		
Sunvisor lights	72	Vehicle loading	154		
Surround Vision	184	Vehicle maintenance	222		
T		Vehicle security system	13		
Tachometer	89				



www.opel.com

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: May 2025, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

OVIVACO2505en-1

